The original editor of the Arden Shakespeare was W. J. Craig (1899-1906), succeeded by R. H. Case 1909-1944. Present editor, Una Ellis-Fermor; advisory editor, H. F. Brooks

H. A. Evans's edition of King Henry V first published 1903

It was reprinted twice

The present edition (J. H. Walter) first published in 1954
CONTENTS

PREFACE vii

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS ix

INTRODUCTION:

1. Date of Composition, Performance and Publication xi
2. The Diversity of Critical Opinions xii
3. The Epic Nature of the Play and its Implications —the Ideal King xiv
4. The Conversion of Prince Henry xviii
5. Shakespeare's Henry V xxiii
6. Fluellen xxxii
7. The Spiritual Significance of the Play xxxiii
8. Historical Sources xxxiv
9. Previous Plays on Henry V xxxvii
10. The Nature of the Quarto and Folio Texts—Evidence of Alterations in the Folio Text Falstaff originally included xxxviii
11. The "Rejection of Falstaff"—A Link with the Merry Wives xliii
12. Bibliographical Note xlv

KING HENRY V I

APPENDICES:

I Extracts from Holinshed's Chronicles, 1587 159
II The Gift of the Tennis Balls 164
III The Wooing Scene from The Famous Victories of Henry the Fifth 165
PREFACE

In the present edition, footnotes, Introduction and Appendices, have been entirely rewritten. Here and there, however, a note from the first Arden has been retained.

The text is based on that of the Cambridge Shakespeare edited by W. Aldis Wright, 1891. It has been necessary, however, to make some departures from that edition: a few French spellings have been modernized, some entry notices and marks of punctuation have been altered, and a few new readings have been introduced; e.g. see ii. i. 36; iii. i. 7; iv. v. 11. Apart from the French words the effect of the alterations has been to bring the text nearer to that of the Folio. Folio readings which for any reason have not been adopted are recorded in the notes, except in the scenes where the dialogue is mainly in French; there a selection of Folio readings is given.

F stands for the First Folio, 1623, Q for the first quarto, 1600; only when it is necessary to distinguish readings from later Folios or Quartos are the terms F 1, F 2, etc., Q 1, Q 2, Q 3 used.

References to Shakespeare’s other plays follow the line numeration of the Oxford Shakespeare, 1916.
O Lord, thou knowest that mine intent hath been and yet is, if I might live, to build again the walls of Jerusalem.

Henry V (on his death-bed).
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I am very grateful to the many friends and acquaintances who have helped me in various ways. The General Editor, Professor Una Ellis-Fermor, has been an ever-present help; her wise guidance and timely encouragement have been most generously given. My friend of many years, Mr. J. H. P. Pafford, Goldsmiths' Librarian, University of London, has given me assistance beyond measure. I feel ashamed to think how greatly I have trespassed on his kindness and on the good nature of his staff. It is a pleasure to acknowledge Sir Walter Greg's kindness and helpfulness. His private comments on the textual theory put forward in the *Modern Language Review* (see below, p. xxxviii) have been most valuable, and he has preserved me from at least one extravagantly ingenious emendation. My colleagues, Miss E. R. Crossley and Dr. P. W. Packer, have kindly allowed me to discuss various points with them, and I have profited greatly from their knowledge and experience.

The note on scoring in tennis, i. ii. 263, owes much to the information very kindly given me by Mr. L. H. J. Dorey, Editor of *Lawn Tennis and Badminton*.

To the Editors of the *Modern Language Review* I am grateful for permission to use material from an article of mine, "With Sir John in it" (*MLR*, xli. No. 3, 1946). Mr. Alan Keen very generously lent me a copy of Hall's *Union of the Two Noble Families*, 1550, and his enthusiasm caused me to reread Hall with considerable benefit to this edition. Recently, Mrs. J. Alder has helped me by acute criticism and by very kindly typing the Introduction.

My debt to the writings of Professor C. J. Sisson, Sir Edmund Chambers, J. Dover Wilson in textual matters will be obvious; so also to Lily B. Campbell, C. L. Kingsford, J. A. Wylie, whose work on the life of Henry V and on the Tudor view of history has been of the greatest value. I should like to thank, too, the many writers whose works, though not mentioned in this edition, have undoubtedly helped to shape my views; many of them, such as
C. Spurgeon, E. Dowden, G. Wilson Knight, A. Hart, Hardin Craig, Granville Barker will need no introduction to students of Shakespeare's plays.

Dr. H. F. Brooks, the textual editor, whose most welcome help came when this edition was well advanced, has made valuable and illuminating suggestions, and he has helped to purge it of all too many faults.

To my wife I owe more than I can express: her clear, penetrating mind has saved me from grievous errors, and her encouragement and sympathetic foresight made easy and enjoyable a task that might have become tedious.

J. H. W.
INTRODUCTION

1. Date of Composition, Performance and Publication

Henry V was almost certainly written in the spring or summer of 1599. The evidence for this is an allusion in Act v. Chorus, ll. 30-2:

Were now the general of our gracious empress,
As in good time he may, from Ireland coming,
Bringing rebellion broached on his sword . . .

"The general" clearly refers to the Earl of Essex, who led an expedition into Ireland to crush Tyrone's rebellion. Essex left London on 27 March 1599 and returned on 28 September in the same year having failed in his task. It is possible that the words of the Chorus were written nearer March than September, since long before the latter month it had become apparent to everybody that Essex would not be making a return in triumph.

Some support from external sources exists. Meres does not mention the play in his Palladis Tamia, 1598, and this is an indication that it had not appeared before that date, although Meres' list is not complete.

Again, some incidents and phrases in The Life of Sir John Oldcastle, 1600, are derived without doubt from parallel incidents in Henry V. The breaking of the angel between King Henry and Sir John of Wrotham and the subsequent revealing of Henry's identity (III. iv; IV. i) is taken from Henry's incognito adventures and the glove incident; Harpoole's compelling of the Sumner to eat his warrant (II. i. 1-127) is drawn from Pistol's ordeal of the leek; and the conspiracy scenes in v. i. contain phrases that echo phrases in the corresponding scene in Henry V (II. ii). Henry V therefore must have been acted before 16 October 1599, for on that date Henslowe records in his Diary that he disbursed ten pounds to be paid to the authors of Sir John Oldcastle.1

1 See Tucker Brooke, Shakespeare Apocrypha, 1918, xxvii.
In the following year it was entered in the Stationers’ Registers: “4 Augusti [1600] . . . Henry the fift, a book} to be staied” (Arber, III. 37), the entry being presumably an attempt by the players to forestall the printing of an unauthorized and pirated copy. However, a further entry ten days later shows that they were unsuccessful, and that Millington and Busby had already published Q 1. The copyright was therefore transferred to Thomas Pavier:

“14 Augusti. Thomas Pavier. Entered for his Copyes by Direction of master White warden vnder his hand wrytinge. These Copyes followinge beinge thinges formerlye printed and sett over to the sayd Thomas Pavier, viz. . . . The historye of Henry the Vth with the battell of Agencourt vjd” (Arber, III 169).

The unauthorized first quarto bears the following title-page:

The Cronicle History of Henry the fift, With his battell fought at Agin Court in France. Togethuer with Auntient Pistoll. As it hath bene sundry times playd by the Right honorable the Lord Chamberlaine his servaunts. [Creede’s device] London Printed by Thomas Creede, for Tho. Millington, and Iohn Busby. And are to be sold at his house in Carter Lane, next the Powle head. 1600.

Apart from the general statement that the play “hath bene sundry times played” there is no recorded performance of the play until the entry in the Revels Accounts on 7 January 1605, when the King’s Majesty’s Players presented it at Court.

Although this quarto was twice reprinted in 1602 and 1619, the first authoritative edition is that of the First Folio, 1623.

2. THE DIVERSITY OF CRITICAL OPINIONS

We have no reason to doubt that Henry V, even without Falstaff, that “globe of sinful continents”, was a popular play. It is only later that criticism becomes doubtful, uncertain and confused, particularly when it is directed at Henry. Johnson found fault with him in Act v:

1 For evidence that players’ companies did attempt to control publication see Malone Soc. Collections, II (3) 384-5 and Alexander, Shakespeare’s Life and Art, p. 34, n. 1.
2 See below, p. xxxviii.
INTRODUCTION

"I know not why Shakespeare now gives the king nearly such a character as he made him formerly ridicule in Percy... The truth is, that the poet's matter failed him in the fifth act, and he was glad to fill it up with whatever he could get."

Bradley, Oxford Lectures on Poetry, 1926, pp. 256-7, sums up Henry's virtues:

"... he is, perhaps the most efficient character drawn by Shakespeare, unless Ulysses, in Troilus and Cressida, is his equal. And so he has been described as Shakespeare's ideal man of action; nay, it has even been declared that here for once Shakespeare plainly disclosed his own ethical creed, and showed us his ideal, not simply of a man of action, but of a man."

Then, rejecting this latter view, he continues:

"... we shall discover with the many fine traits a few less pleasing... he is still his father's son, the son of the man whom Hotspur called a 'vile politician'. Henry's religion, for example, is genuine, it is rooted in his modesty; but it is also superstitious—an attempt to buy off supernatural vengeance for Richard's blood; and it is also in part political, like his father's projected crusade. Just as he went to war chiefly because, as his father told him, it was the way to keep factious nobles quiet and unite the nation, so when he adjures the Archbishop to satisfy him as to his right to the French throne, he knows very well that the Archbishop wants the war, because it will defer and perhaps prevent what he considers the spoliation of the Church. This same strain of policy is what Shakespeare marks in the first soliloquy in Henry IV, where the prince describes his riotous life as a mere scheme to win him glory later. It implies that readiness to use other people as means to his own ends which is a conspicuous feature in his father."

That is a severe indictment. On the other hand, Charles Williams, in his "Henry V" in Shakespeare Criticism, 1919-35, pp. 187-8, writes thus of Henry on the eve of Agincourt:

"Henry then has made of his crisis an exaltation of his experience; he has become gay. This gaiety—a 'modest' gaiety, to take another adjective from the Chorus—lasts all through the Act. It lightens and saves the speech on ceremony; more especially, it illuminates the speech to Westmoreland. In view of the King's capacity the stress there may well be on the adjective rather than the substantive: 'We few, we happy few.' His rejection of all those who have no stomach for the fight, his offer of crowns for convoy, is part of the same delight: so far as possible he will have no one there who does not love to be there. He makes jokes at the expense of the old men's 'tall stories' of the battle, and at the French demand for ransom. We are clean away
KING HENRY V

from the solemn hero-king, and therefore much more aware of the Harry of the Chorus, and of the thing he is—the 'touch of Harry in the night'. The very last line of that scene—'how thou pleasest, God, dispose the day'—is not a prayer of resignation but a cry of complete carelessness. What does it matter what happens? . . .

"[Henry] deserves more greatly than has perhaps always been allowed. The Muse, entertaining conjecture of a new and dreadful world, conjectured also a touch in the night, the thawing of fear, a royal captain of a ruined hand, and conjectured the nature of the power of love and consequent lightness that thrills through the already poring dusk."

Masefield, Shakespeare, 1911, p. 121, is scornful, "Henry V is the one commonplace man in the eight plays"; but to Moore Smith, Warwick ed., p. 31 Shakespeare "loves this 'plain soldier' from the bottom of his heart, and means us to do the same". Van Doren, Shakespeare, 1941, p. 176, is contemptuous, "The king whom he has groomed to be the ideal English king, all plumes and smiles and decorated courage, collapses here into a mere good fellow, a hearty undergraduate with enormous initials on his chest". And while there are some who consider that Henry was merely doing on a large scale what Bardolph did on a small scale, Dover Wilson, New Cambridge ed., p. xli, writing of the lines, "How thou pleasest, God, dispose the day", rises to opposing heights, "It is a statement of the ultimate heroic faith, a faith which, like that of the martyrs, puts him who holds it beyond reach of mortal man". The debate continues.

3. THE EPIC NATURE OF THE PLAY AND ITS IMPLICATIONS
THE IDEAL KING

Poor Henry! the chorus of critics sings both high and low, now as low as "Mars, his idiot", now as high as "This star of England". It is strangely ironical that a play in which the virtue of unity is so held up for imitation should provoke so much disunity among its commentators.

More recently Tillyard, Shakespeare's History Plays, 1944, and Dover Wilson have examined the play from fresh aspects. Tillyard considers that the weight of historical and legendary tradition hampered Shakespeare too greatly;
that the inconsistencies of Henry's miraculously changed character, the picture of the ideal king and the good mixer were "impossible of worthy fulfilment". Dover Wilson praises Shakespeare's attempt to deal with the epic form of the story, and he writes with justice and with moving eloquence on the heroic spirit that informs the play. Both pose important questions without following up the implications of their own terms. It is necessary, therefore, to make some general observations on the relationship of Henry V to epic poetry, to the ideal king and, very briefly, to the view of history in the intellectual fashions of the day.

The reign of Henry V was fit matter for an epic. Daniel omits apologetically Henry's reign from his Civil Wars, but pauses to comment,

O what eternal matter here is found
Whence new immortal Iliads might proceed;

and there is little doubt that this was also the opinion of his contemporaries, for not only was its theme of proper magnitude, but it also agreed with Aristotle's pronouncement that the epic fable should be matter of history. Shakespeare, therefore, in giving dramatic form to material of an epic nature was faced with difficulties. Not the least was noted by Jonson, following Aristotle, "As to a Tragedy or a Comedy, the Action may be convenient, and perfect, that would not fit an Epiche Poeme in Magnitude" (Discoveries, ed. 1933, p. 102). Again, while Shakespeare took liberties with the unity of action in his plays, insistence on unity of action was also a principle of epic construction (Discoveries, p. 105) and could not lightly be ignored. Finally, the purpose of epic poetry was the moral one of arousing admiration and encouraging imitation. Sidney writes,

"as the image of each action styrreth and instructeth the mind, so the loftie image of such Worthies most inflameth the mind with desire to be worthy, and informes with counsel how to be worthy" (Apologie, p. 33).

Shakespeare's task was not merely to extract material for a play from an epic story, but within the physical limits of the stage and within the admittedly inadequate dramatic convention to give the illusion of an epic whole.
In consequence *Henry V* is daringly novel, nothing quite like it had been seen on the stage before. No wonder Shakespeare, after the magnificent epic invocation of the Prologue, becomes apologetic; no wonder he appeals most urgently to his audiences to use their imagination, for in daring to simulate the "best and most accomplished kinde of Poetry" (*Apologie*, p. 33) on the common stage he laid himself open to the scorn and censure of the learned and judicious.

Dover Wilson points out that Shakespeare accepted the challenge of the epic form by writing a series of historic tableaux and emphasizing the epical tone "by a Chorus, who speaks five prologues and an epilogue". Undoubtedly the speeches of the Chorus are epical in tone, but they have another epical function, for in the careful way they recount the omitted details of the well-known story, they secure unity of action. Shakespeare, in fact, accepts Sidney's advice to follow the ancient writers of tragedy and "by some Nuncio to recount things done in former time or other place" (*Apologie*, p. 53). Indeed, it is possible that the insistent emphasis on action in unity in i. ii. 180-213, with illustrations drawn from music, bees, archery, sundials, the confluence of roads and streams, is, apart from its immediate context, a reflection of Shakespeare's concern with unity of action in the structure of the play.

The moral values of the epic will to a large extent depend on the character and action of the epic hero, who in renaissance theory must be perfect above the common run of men and of royal blood, in effect, the ideal king. Now the ideal king was a very real conception. From Isocrates onwards attempts had been made to compile the virtues essential to such a ruler. Christian writers had made free use of classical works until the idea reached its most influential form in the *Institutio Principis*, 1516, of Erasmus. Elyot and other sixteenth century writers borrowed from Erasmus; indeed, there is so much repetition and rearranging of the same material that it is impossible to be certain of the dependence of one writer upon another. Shakespeare knew Elyot's *Governor*, yet he seems closer in his general views to the *Institutio* and to Chelidonius' treatise
translated from Latin into French by Bouvaisteau and from French into English by Chilvester as *Of the Institution and firste beginning of Christian Princes*, 1571. How much Shakespeare had assimilated these ideas will be obvious from the following collection of parallels from Erasmus,\(^1\) Chelidonius and *Henry V*.

It is assumed that the king is a Christian (i. ii. 241, 2 Chorus 6; Chel. p. 82; Eras., Prefatory Letter, p. 177 etc.) and one who supports the Christian Church (i. i. 23, 73; Chel., p. 82; Eras., *passim*). He should be learned (i. i. 32, 38-47; Chel., p. 57, c. VI.; Eras., Prefatory Letter) and well versed in theology (i. i. 38-40; Eras., p. 153). Justice should be established in his kingdom (ii. ii; 2 *Henry IV*, v. ii. 43-145; Chel., p. 42, c. X; Eras., pp. 221-37) and he himself should show clemency (ii. ii. 39-60; iii. iii. 54; iii. vi. 111-18; Chel., pp. 128-37; Eras., p. 209) not take personal revenge (ii. i. 174; Chel., p. 137; Eras., pp. 231-3) and exercise self-control (i. i. 241-3; Chel., p. 41; Eras., pp. 156-7). He should allow himself to be counselled by wise men (i. ii; ii. iv. 33; Chel., c. VI; Eras., p. 156), and should be familiar with humble people (iv. i. 85-235; Chel., pp. 129, 131; Eras., p. 245) though as Erasmus points out he should not allow himself to be corrupted by them (p. 150). The king seeks the defence and preservation of his state (i. ii. 136-54; ii. ii. 175-7; Chel., p. 148; Eras., pp. 160, 161, etc.), his mind is burdened with affairs of state (iv. i. 236-90; Eras., p. 160) which keep him awake at night (iv. ii. 264, 273-4, 289; Eras., pp. 162, 184, 244). The kingdom of a good king is like the human body whose parts work harmoniously and in common defence (i. i. 178-83; Chel., p. 166; Eras., pp. 175-6) and again like the orderly bee society (i. i. 183-204; Chel., pp. 18-21; Eras., pp. 147, 165) with its obedient subjects (i. i. 186-7; Chel., p. 21; cf. Eras., p. 236). He should cause idlers, parasites and flatterers to be banished or executed (the fate of Bardolph, Nym, Doll, etc.; Chel., Prologue; Eras., p. 194 etc.). The ceremony and insignia of a king are valueless unless the king has the right spirit (iv. i. 244-74;

\(^1\)For convenience the translation of the *Institutio*, by L. K. Born, *The Education of a Christian Prince*, 1936, has been used.
KING HENRY V

Eras., pp. 150-2); some titles are mere flattery (iv. i. 269; Eras., p. 197); at all costs flattery is to be avoided (iv. i. 256-73; Chel., Prologue; Eras., pp. 193-204). Although it is customary to compare kings with great men of the past, the kings must remember that as Christians they are far better than such men as Alexander (iv. vii. 13-53; Eras., pp. 153, 203; cf. Chel., denunciation of Alexander for murdering Cleitus, p. 129). The king should consider his responsibility in war for causing the deaths of so many innocent people (iv. i. 135-49; Eras., pp. 253-4). The evils of war are described (ii. iv. 105-9; iii. iii. 10-41; v. ii. 34-62; Chel., pp. 169-71; Eras., pp. 253-4). It is a good thing for a king to enter into the honourable estate of matrimony (v. ii; Chel., p. 179). Erasmus regards marriage for the sake of an alliance as liable to create further strife (pp. 241-3).

There are, too, some small points of resemblance. Chelidonius gives a full account of the society of bees (pp. 18-21) taken mainly from Pliny, Nat. Hist., XI, and St. Ambrose, Hexaemeron, and his opening phrasing is similar to Shakespeare’s, “they have their King, and seeme to kepe a certaine forme of a kingdome”, and he too stresses obedience as a civic virtue. The episode of the man who railed against Henry has a close parallel. Chelidonius, p. 137, refers to a story of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, who pardoned some soldiers who spoke “uncomly and indecet wordes of him” because they were drunk with wine.

4. THE CONVERSION OF PRINCE HENRY

It is just this portrait of Henry, the ideal king, that most commentators have found difficult to reconcile with Prince Hal, and to describe Henry as Hal “grown wise” is to avoid the issue. If Henry V is the end that crowns 1 and 2 Henry IV, then King Henry V must come to terms with Prince Hal. The heart of the matter is the nature of the

---

² This part of the Institution was added by Bouvaisteau.
² Shakespeare, however, may have remembered the incident in Plutarch.
change that came over Henry at his coronation, and this
must be examined in detail.

Shakespeare gives only one observer’s account of what
happened, that by the Archbishop of Canterbury i. i.
25-34:

The breath no sooner left his father’s body,
But that his wildness, mortified in him,
Seem’d to die too; yea, at that very moment,
Consideration like an angel came,
And whipp’d the offending Adam out of him,
Leaving his body as a paradise,
T’envelop and contain celestial spirits,
Never was such a sudden scholar made;
Never came reformation in a flood,
With such a heady currance, scouring faults.

This deftly intricate passage is based mainly on the
Baptismal Service from the Book of Common Prayer. Compare,

“he being dead unto sin ... and being buried with Christ in his death,
maye crucifye the olde man, and utterlye abolyshe the whole bodye of
sinne”;

and,

“graunt that the olde Adam in this child may be so buryed, that the
new man may be raised up in him”;

and,

“that all carnall affections maye dye in him, and that all thynge
belonginge to the Spirite may lyve and growe in him”.

Again the baptismal “washing away of sins” is almost
certainly responsible for the flood imagery in ll. 32-4. Not
only is Baptism the “only true repentance” in Jeremy
Taylor’s phrase, but it is also a means of “spiritual regenera-
tion”.

This, however, is not all. Lines 28-30, besides con-
taining an obvious allusion to the casting forth of
Adam and Eve from the Garden of Eden (Gen. iii. 23-4)
have a deeper significance. The word “consideration” is
usually glossed as “reflection” or “contemplation”, but
this is surely an unsatisfactory gloss here. Its usage in this
period points to another connotation. In the Authorized

Version the verb "consider" is frequently used where it is almost equivalent to an exhortation to repent from evil doing or at least in association with evil doing (Deut. xxxii. 29; Ps. l. 22; Hag. i. 5; Isa. i. 3; Jer. xxiii. 20; xxx. 24, etc.). In Donne's sermons "consideration" appears again with similar associations (Sermons XLV, LIV. § 2, LXIII, etc.), as it does in Hooker (Works, 1850, II. 242). Jeremy Taylor, Holy Living and Holy Dying uses "consideration" in numerous section headings with the meaning of spiritual contemplation, and again in the general context of turning away from sin to the good life or the good death. It is evident that the word was associated with intense spiritual contemplation, and self-examination, and not with merely thought or reflection.

Centuries earlier Bernard of Clairvaux, called upon to write an exhortation that would encourage corrupt members of the Church to repent and reform their lives, wrote De Consideratione. "Consideration" for St. Bernard is one of the "creatures of Heaven" \(^1\) dominated on earth by the senses. He notes that St. Paul's ecstasies (2 Cor. xii. 4) were departures from the senses and therefore forms of consideration or divine contemplation in which men were "caught up to Paradise". Consideration, when the help of heavenly beings is given—and such angelic help is given to those who are the "heirs of salvation" (Heb. i. 14)—becomes perfection in the contemplation of God. There is no evidence that Shakespeare knew Bernard's work, although it was regarded as one of his most important writings and was very highly esteemed in the Middle Ages. But the linking of significant words "consideration", "angel", "paradise", "celestial spirits", indicates that Shakespeare was undoubtedly thinking of repentance and conversion in the religious sense.

In a later comment on the Prince's reformation, Canterbury says,

\[\text{for miracles are ceas'd;}\]
\[\text{And therefore we must needs admit the means}\]
\[\text{How things are perfected.}\]

\(^1\) Quotations taken from the translation of G. Lewis, 1908, pp. 130-7.
INTRODUCTION

Had it been doctrinally admissible Canterbury would have acknowledged a miracle; as it is, he has to admit that to the Prince by the revelation of divine grace is "made known the supernatural way of salvation and law for them to live in that shall be saved" (Hooker, *Eccles. Polity*, I. xi. 5).

Was there any suggestion of a religious conversion in the historical sources? Hall and Holinshed both state briefly that the Prince "put on the new man", a phrase that had become proverbial even in the sixteenth century and may therefore have lost its original scriptural significance. With two exceptions the earlier chroniclers are not very informative on this point; the exceptions are Elmham's *Liber Metricus* (p. 100), which gives a mere hint in the line "rex hominem veterem sic renovare" and the *Vita et Gesta Henrici Quinti*, written some thirty years after Henry's death. In this latter work, Henry, upon his father's death, spent the day in profound grief and repentance, he shed bitter tears and admitted his errors. At night he went secretly to a man of perfect life at Westminster and received absolution. He departed completely changed "felici miraculo convertitur" (pp. 14-15). The writer of the *Vita et Gesta* has no doubt that there was a miraculous conversion.

It is not certain that Shakespeare was acquainted with the *Vita et Gesta*, but it is highly probable (see notes on sources, p. xxxiv) at least as probable as that he knew the *Gesta*.

It may be objected that this does not solve the problem, but only introduces almost literally a *deus ex machina*. Yet if we had read 1 and 2 *Henry IV* with imagination, this turn of events would not appear arbitrary and inconsistent. Let us reconsider some of Hal's speeches and actions in these two plays. In 1 *Henry IV*, i. ii. 217-39, Hal's declaration that he would throw off his unyoked idle humour when the time was ripe and thereby gain wide approbation has earned him accusations of cold-hearted, selfish scheming. Admittedly the speech is a clumsy dramatic device which Shakespeare also used in *Richard III* to let Gloucester announce that he was "determined to prove a villain". But it is not cold-blooded scheming, it is a piece of self-extenuation, a failure to reform which Hal justifies as
unconvincingly as Hamlet does his failure to run Claudius through while he was at prayer. It is no more and no less than St. Augustine's youthful prayer of repentance, "O God, send me purity and continence—but not yet". Henry's interview with his father brings about a partial change of his attitude, but he does not see beyond physical and material ends; his atonement is to match himself in battle with Hotspur, in which he succeeds brilliantly. These taken with Vernon's praise of him, 1 Henry IV, v. ii. 51-68, suggest perhaps not altogether fancifully, that Henry had reached physical perfection, the first of Aristotle's three ways of perfection.

In 2 Henry IV, ii. ii. 51-61, we are given a clear warning not to think that Henry is a hypocrite, and in iv. iv. 67-78 Warwick's defence of the Prince's essential integrity. At the same time the Prince and Falstaff are moving farther apart, Hal has nothing to do with Falstaff's night of venery, nor with his capture of Coleville. The soliloquy on the cares of kingship shows the Prince beginning to realize his responsibilities; his profound grief (mentioned twice it should be noted), his reconciliation with his father, his committal of the powers of the law into the hands of the Lord Chief Justice, suggest again that he is attaining the second Aristotelian perfection, intellectual perfection, or as Hooker phrased it, "perfection civil and moral" (Eccles. Polity, I. xi. 4).

Finally, Canterbury's account in Henry V shows Henry's perfection, physical, intellectual and spiritual completed, he is now the "mirror of Christendom".

It could not be otherwise. Medieval and Tudor historians saw in the events they described the unfolding of God's plan, history for them was still a handmaid to theology, queen of sciences. Henry V, the epic hero and the agent of God's plan, must therefore be divinely inspired and dedicated; he is every bit as dedicated as is "pius Aeneas" to follow the divine plan of a transcendent God.

Within this all-embracing Christian Providence there was an acceptance of classical beliefs of the innate tendency of states to decay, and of the limitations and repetitions of
human thoughts and emotions throughout the ages consequent on the sameness of the elements from which human bodies were formed. It was hoped that men would return to the brilliance of pagan achievement in classical times, that highest peak of human endeavour, since the conception of progress had not yet come to birth. In the meantime classical writers were models for imitation and touchstones of taste, classical figures were exemplars of human actions and passions, and the language of Cicero and Virgil, still current, foreshortened the centuries between. The modern was naturally compared with the ancient, Henry with Alexander. Calvary apart there could be no greater praise.

Only a leader of supreme genius bountifully assisted by Fortune and by the unity of his people could arrest this civic entropy and raise a state to prosperity. We do less than justice to Henry if we do not realize that in Elizabethan eyes he was just such a leader whose exploits were greater than those of other English kings, in Raleigh’s words “None of them went to worke like a Conquerour: saue onely King Henrie the fift”.

5. Shakespeare’s Henry V

This is the man, and this his background. Let us now look more closely at Shakespeare’s presentation of him in the major incidents of the play.

The conversation of Canterbury and Ely in the opening scene establishes economically the religious conversion of Henry on the highest authority in the country, Henry’s support of the Church as a true Christian monarch, and his desire for guidance from learned churchmen, a procedure warmly recommended to kings by Erasmus, Chelidonius and Hooker. Later Canterbury demolishes the French objections to Henry’s claim to the throne of France, and by his authority encourages Henry to undertake a righteous war. The characters of the two prelates have been heavily assailed, but Dover Wilson is surely right in his vindication of their integrity. Hall’s bitter attack on the churchmen who sought to divert Henry’s attention from the Bill by advocating war with France was followed more moderately
by Holinshed. 1 Shakespeare, however, alters the order of events. Canterbury on behalf of Convocation offers Henry a subsidy to help him in the war with France which is already under consideration. His speech on the Salic Law is made at Henry’s request to discover the truth behind the French objections to claims already presented, and not as in Hall and Holinshed thrust forward to divert his attention from the Lollard Bill by initiating a war with France. In 1585 in very similar circumstances the Earl of Leicester asked Archbishop Whitgift whether he should advise Queen Elizabeth to fight on the side of the Low Countries against Spain. There was talk, too, of seizing Church revenues to pay for the war, but nevertheless the Church encouraged the war and offered a substantial subsidy. 2 Moreover, to portray Henry as the dupe of two scheming prelates, or as a crafty politician skilfully concealing his aims with the aid of an unscrupulous archbishop, is not consistent with claiming at the same time that he is the ideal king; indeed it is destructive of the moral epic purpose of the play.

Yet Henry has been so calumniated. His invasion of France has been stigmatized as pure aggression—though the word is somewhat worn—and Henry himself charged with hypocrisy. Now Henry does not, as Bradley alleges, adjure “the Archbishop to satisfy him as to his right to the French throne”, he urges that the Archbishop should

justly and religiously unfold
Why the law Salic that they have in France
Or should, or should not, bar us in our claim

and the remaining thirty-two lines of his speech are a most solemn warning to the Archbishop not to

wrest, or bow your reading,
Or nicely charge your understanding soul
With opening titles miscreate, whose right
Suits not in native colours with the truth.

1 Christopher Watson, The Victorious acts of Henry the fift, “coercted out of Hall” goes further than Hall. He refers to the “panchyling porkheads” who to divert Henry’s attention from the bill seek to “obnebulate his sences with some glistering vail” (p. 100).

This does not sound like hypocrisy or cynicism. The Archbishop discharges his duty faithfully, as it stands his reasoning is impeccable apart from any warrant given by the precedent of Edward III’s claims. Henry is not initiating aggression, in fact Shakespeare omits from Exeter’s speech in Hall the one argument that has a predatory savour, namely, that the fertility of France makes it a desirable addition to the English crown. And if Shakespeare did consider Henry’s claims justified, he was thinking in agreement with Gentili, the greatest jurist of the sixteenth century, who quite uninvited expressed his opinion that the claim of the English kings to the French throne was legal and valid:

“... as the kings of England wished to retain their rights in the kingdom of France ... calling themselves their kings ... and thus they preserve a kind of civil possession. ... And that title is not an empty one. ...”

De Iure Belli, p. 110.

Henry accepts the advice of his counsellors, but he it is who displays his foresight by asking the right questions. Shakespeare again adapts his sources to make Henry the first to raise the possibility of a Scottish invasion—not merely the incursion of marauding bands—during his absence in France, and then to assure himself of the essential unity of the country and its capacity to deal with such a threat.

In the presentation of the tennis balls by the French ambassadors Shakespeare has made a significant change from both Hall and Holinshed. Holinshed places the incident before Archbishop Chichele’s speech in the Parliament of 1414, before there has been any suggestion of invading France; Hall places it after the speeches of Chichele, Westmoreland and Exeter, adding that, though he cannot be certain, this “vnwise presente” among other things may have moved Henry to be “determined fully to make warre in Fraunce”. In the play it is placed after Henry has determined to make war in France, it makes no difference to the issue. Shakespeare uses it to show Henry’s christian self-control. To the French ambassadors, uneasy lest their message may cost them their lives, he declares:
We are no tyrant, but a Christian king;
Unto whose grace our passion is as subject
As is our wretches fetter'd in our prisons.

The message itself he receives with unruffled urbanity:

We are glad the Dauphin is so pleasant with us;
His present and your pains we thank you for . . .

and wittily turns the jest on the sender. Henry, the ideal king, is not to be incited to war by a personal insult; he reveals remarkable self-restraint, at the same time warning the Dauphin that his refusal to treat the English claims seriously will bring about bloodshed and sorrow.

While with some insensitiveness to irony we in this modern age may excuse Henry's invasion of France as arising from his limited medieval horizons, many are less inclined to pardon his rejection of Falstaff. Although Shakespeare's original intention was to portray Falstaff lording the fields of France, no doubt discreetly distant from Henry, he must accept responsibility for the play as it is. If he were prohibited from introducing Falstaff in person into _Henry V_, why was it necessary to mention Falstaff at all? In some slight way it might be regarded as fulfilling the promise in the epilogue of _2 Henry IV_ that Falstaff might "die of a sweat", or as containing a topical reference to the Oldestayn affairs, or as the best conclusion that could be made to cover the results of official interference; any or all of these might be offered as explanation. Surely the truth lies deeper. The "finer end" that Falstaff made changes the tone of the play, it deepens the emotion; indeed, it probably deepened the tone of the new matter in Act iv. The play gains in epic strength and dignity from Falstaff's death, even as the _Aeneid_ gains from Dido's death, not only because both accounts are written from the heart with a beauty and power that have moved men's hearts in after time, but because Dido and Falstaff are sacrifices to a larger morality they both ignore. Some similarities too between Aeneas and Henry may be noted; both neglect their duties for pleasant dalliance; both are recalled to their duty by divine interposition; thenceforth both submit to the Divine Will—it is significant that in
Aeneid, IV, 393, immediately after Dido’s denunciation of him, Aeneas is “pius” for the first time in that book—both display a stoic self-control for which they have been charged with coldness and callowness.

Falstaff has given us medicines to make us love him, he has bewitched us with his company just as Dido bewitched the imagination of the Middle Ages. We have considered him at once too lightly and too seriously: too seriously in that we hold him in the balance against Henry and England, and too lightly in that as a corrupt flatterer he stands for the overthrow of the divinely ordained political order. Erasmus expresses the opinion of the age when he reserves his severest censures for those flatterers who corrupt a prince, the most precious possession a country has (p. 194), and whom he would punish with death. Falstaff is such a one. If Henry’s conversion and acceptance of God’s will mean anything at all, they must be viewed in the light of the period to see Henry’s full stature, even as a reconsideration of Virgil’s religion enlarges and dignifies the character of Aeneas. The medieval habit of mind did not disappear with the Renaissance and Copernicus, on the contrary it is no longer a paradox that the Renaissance was the most medieval thing the Middle Ages produced. For both Middle Ages and Renaissance religion was planned, logical and integrated with everyday life, not as it is for many of their descendants a sentimental impulse to an occasional charity. So while a place may have been found for Falstaff with his crew of disreputable followers with Henry’s army, there could be no room for him in Henry’s tent on the eve of Agincourt.

It has been suggested that Henry deals with the conspirators with cat-like cruelty. Now Shakespeare has deliberately added to his immediate sources the pardoning of the drunkard who reviled Henry and the merciless attitude of the conspirators towards this man. While the latter may owe something to Le Fèvre, there is nothing of the kind in Hall or Holinshed. The reason is clear enough. Henry is to be shown as the ideal prince magnanimous enough to pardon offences against his person like Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, and the conspirators are to blacken
themselves by their contrasting lack of mercy. Even when to high treason Scroop adds the personal disloyalty of a beloved and trusted friend, a treachery that disgusted Henry's nobles, Henry, consistent with his mercy to the drunkard, seeks no personal revenge:

Touching our person seek we no revenge;
But we our kingdom's safety must so tender,
Whose ruin you have sought, that to her laws
We do deliver you.

Henry's threats to Harfleur sound horrible enough, but he was precisely and unswervingly following the rules of warfare as laid down by Vegetius, Aegidius Romanus, and others. Harfleur he regards as his rightful inheritance, and those who withhold it from him are "guilty in defence", because they wage an "impious war".1 He allows the besieged time to discover whether a relieving force is on its way, then warns them to surrender before he begins his main assault which could not then be halted and which would have inevitable evil consequences. All this was in strict accord with military law:

"This also is the reason for the law of God which provides that cities which do not surrender before they are besieged shall not be spared" (Gentili, De Iure Belli, p. 217).

Henry again exercises his royal clemency by requiring Exeter to "use mercy to them all".

It is in Act iv that we see the full picture of Henry as the heroic leader. The devotion and enthusiasm he inspires indeed begin earlier, before he set foot in France. His personality has united England as never before (i. i. 127), and already "the youth of England are on fire" eager to follow the "mirror of all Christian kings". Something of the expectation in the air of 1598, when Essex was preparing his forces for Ireland has infected the spirit of these lines. A contemporary describes such a gathering:

"They were young gentlemen, yeomen, and yeomen's sons and artificers of the most brave sort, such as did disdain to pilfer and steal, but went as voluntary to serve of a gaiety and joyalty of mind, all which kind of people are the force and flower of a kingdom." 2

1 See note to iii. iii. 15.
The heavy losses before Harfleur by battle and dysentery, the "rainy marching in the painful field", the frightening size of the French army which might well have disheartened Henry's men, only united them closer still. Henry shares their dangers and is accepted into their fellowship which his exhilaration and leadership had made so strong. He shares too in the grim jesting of men bound in spirit in the eye of danger, who hobnob sociably with the Almighty, of Lord Astley at Edgehill and of the English soldier at Fontenoy, who as the French troops levelled their firearms at the motionless English ranks, stepped forward and exclaimed, "For what we are about to receive may the Lord make us truly thankful". Henry's men are "taking no thought for raiment" for if God gives them victory they will have the coats off the Frenchmen's backs, and if not He will otherwise provide robes for them in Heaven.

Nobleman and common soldier alike are inspired by Henry's gay and gallant spirits. Among the English nobles there is a courteous loyalty to each other quite unlike the sparrow squabbling of the French nobles, their preoccupation with vain boasting and their lack of foresight and order. Salisbury, the "winter lion" of 2 Henry VI, goes "joyfully" into battle, and Westmoreland unwishes five thousand of the men he had previously desired. Henry himself sums up the heart of the matter in the memorable words,

"We few, we happy few, we band of brothers",

words that have come to stand for so much that is English. Dover Wilson recalls Churchill's famous epitaph on those who "left the vivid air signed with their honour" in the summer of 1940, "Never in the field of human conflict was so much owed by so many to so few", as coming from the same national mint. But it is older than Shakespeare, it is pure Hall. Listen to his last words on Henry V:

"yet neither fyre, rust, nor fretting time shall amongst Englishmen ether appall his honour or obliterate his glorye whiche in so fewe yeres and brief daies achived so high adventures and made so great a conquest".

The words are English but the mood is older and universal, it is the note of epic heroism that sounded at Thermopylae and in a pass by Rouncesvalles.
While Henry infuses courage into his men, he is not without unease of soul. The conversation with Bates, Court and Williams forces him to examine his conscience on his responsibility for those who are to die in the coming battle, and to complain how little his subjects understand the hard duties of a king in their interests. Militarily his position is desperate: his enemy has selected the time and place for battle, his men are heavily outnumbered, tired and weakened by disease and lack of food. His faith in the righteousness of his cause is strained to the uttermost, and in prayer he pleads that his father’s sin of usurpation may not be remembered against him. His courage is magnificent, and his extraordinary self-control has not always been acknowledged. He does not unpack his heart and curse like a drab, nor flutter Volscian dovecots, nor unseam his enemies from the nave to the chaps, he is no tragic warrior hero, he is the epic leader strong and serene, the architect of victory.

For all his self-control he is moved to rage by the treacherous attack on the boys and lackeys in his tents, and, fearing for the safety of his army gives the harsh order to kill the prisoners. Dover Wilson’s comment is valuable:

“The attack is historical; and Fluellen’s exclamation, ‘Tis expressly against the law of arms, ’tis as arrant a piece of knavery, mark you now, as can be offert! ’, is in accordance with much contemporary comment on the battle, which shows that the treacherous assault left a deep stain upon the chivalry of France. Thus any lingering doubt about Henry’s action is blotted from the minds of even the most squeamish in the audience . . .”

Gower’s remark, “the king most worthily hath caused every soldier to cut his prisoner’s throat. O! ’tis a gallant king”, shows wholehearted approval of Henry’s promptness in decision and his resolute determination. The rage of the epic hero leading to the slaughter of the enemy within his power is not without Virgilian precedent (see Aeneid, X and XII).

Exeter’s account of the deaths of York and Suffolk also touches Henry to tears. The purpose of the description, for which there is no warrant in any of the sources of the play, seems to have been overlooked. It is not, as has
been supposed, an imitation of the moving and presumably successful description of the heroic deaths of Talbot and his son in 1 Henry VI, iv. vi. and vii. York and Suffolk die in the right epic way, their love "passing the love of women" is fulfilled in death. The surviving heroes, in epic style, mourn their death at once so fitting, so sadly beautiful, so "pretty and sweet", a phrase recalling at once that other pair of heroes who "were lovely and pleasant in their lives, and in their death they were not divided".

The Henry of Act v is to many a disappointment, indeed the whole act, it is suggested, is an anticlimax. Dover Wilson defends it rather unconvincingly as a good mixture, and, following Hudson, praises Henry's overflowing spirits and frankness in the wooing scene as a convincing picture of the humorous-heroic man in love. This is so, but the truth lies deeper. The Christian prince to complete his virtues must be married. Bouvaisteau, following Aegidius Romanus, is most emphatic on this point. Erasmus agrees, though he discounts the value of alliances secured by marriage; in this he differs from other theorists. The brisk and joyous wooing promises a happy marriage, though both Henry and Katharine have themselves well under control. In fact, Henry's remark that the eloquence of Kate's lips moves him more than the eloquence of the French Council may be a glance at what some chroniclers openly stated, that Katharine's beauty was used to try to make Henry lessen his demands. Henry's earlier proverbial reference to himself as the king of good fellows may show that he fully appreciates this point that Katharine proverbially is the queen of beggars.

This marriage in particular seals the union of two Christian countries with momentous possibilities for Christ-endom then divided by schism. Henry's letter to Charles as related by Hall puts the matter clearly:

"Sometymes the noble realmes of Englands & of Fraunce were united, whiche nowe be separated and deuided, and as then they were accustomed to be exalted through the universall worlde by their glorious victories, and it was to theim a notable vertue to decore and beautifye the house of God... and to set a concorde in Christes religion (xliii°)."
The Treaty of Troyes saw Henry as the most powerful monarch in Europe, he had built unity by force of arms, by his inspiring military genius, and by the grace of God. He was now the complete Christian monarch, "the mirror of christendom". It is this completion that necessitated Act v, it was not implicit in Agincourt.

The character of Henry has not, of course, been "deduced " from the writings of Erasmus, Chelidonius and others, but it is significant that where Shakespeare adds to his historical sources, the intruding passage or episode has an apt parallel with passages from these writers. Even some of his omissions, notably the absence of reference to the English archers to whom the victory was mainly due, can be construed as helping to enlarge the stature of Henry. It is also not without significance that the Henry of Henry V is a complete and balanced contrast in character and appearance with Richard II in the first play of the tetralogy.

If Henry has proved less interesting a man than Richard, it is because his problems are mainly external. The virtuous man has no obvious strife within the soul, his faith is simple and direct, he has no frailties to suffer in exposure. It is just this rectitude and uprightness, this stoicism, this unswerving obedience to the Divine Will that links both Aeneas and Henry, and has laid them both open to charges of priggishness and inhumanity. Both are complete in soul:

omnia praecepi atque animo mecum ante peregi.

Of Henry as of Aeneas can it truly be said,

rex erat . . . quo iustior alter
nec pietate fuit, nec bello maior et armis.

(\textit{Aeneid}, I. 554-5).

6. Fluellen

Although Hotson has praised Pistol highly,\(^1\) the only other character of any significance is Fluellen.

Fluellen, whatever his origin, whether he is a gentle caricature of Sir Roger Williams as Dover Wilson thinks

\(^1\) In the \textit{Tale Review}, 1948.
INTRODUCTION

(though Hotson has pointed out that he is on the wrong side in the ancients versus moderns dispute), or whether, as seems more likely, he owes a great deal to Ludovic Lloyd,¹ is a well-conceived and endearing figure. The description of Parolles, “the gallant militarist... that had the whole theorick of war in the knot of his scarf, and the practice in the chape of his dagger” (All’s Well, iv. iii. 162-5) fits Fluellen admirably. His quaint pedantry and self-conscious dignity link him at once with his fellow-countrymen Glendower and Sir Hugh Evans, in what may have been national traits, but his essential manliness and love for Henry shine through his oddities. Indeed, he underlines Henry’s virtues, and if the ancestry of Falstaff be Riot as has been suspected, Fluellen in the uncensored version of Henry V may have performed with his cudgel a service that in earlier plays would have required a dagger of lath.

7. THE SPIRITUAL SIGNIFICANCE OF THE PLAY

As for the play itself it has been roundly condemned as lacking spiritually significant ideas. This is curious. In hardly any other play of Shakespeare is there such interweaving of themes of the highest value to an Elizabethan. References, explicit and implicit, to “breed”, “unity”, “honour” (fame), “piety” abound throughout the play. It is noteworthy that the French display degenerate breeding, disunity, dishonour and impiety in waging a “bellum impium” against Henry the rightful inheritor. Shakespeare’s description of the evils and devastation of war as having befallen or as likely to befall the French, it should be observed, are part of his insistence that war is God’s scourge for securing justice among the nations: defeat and despoiling is the portion of those nations whose cause is unrighteous.

What does seem to have escaped notice is the unfolding of Henry’s character. At the outset of the play his virtue after his conversion, complete though it may be, is yet cloistered, it has not sallied forth into the dust and heat. Though he makes decisions, he is dependent on the advice

¹See E. Owen, Ludovic Lloyd, 1931.
of others, and in spite of his self-control, the treachery of Scroop, his bedfellow, obviously hurts him and he finds it necessary to ease his mind in speech. At Harfleur his speech is an incitement to battle, very skilfully done, but with no deeper note. By Agincourt he no longer seeks advice, he acts, he directs. His physical courage, long since proved on Shrewsbury field, is again apparent but not stressed. Shakespeare might have shown the famous combat with Alençon, but he did not, physical prowess in Henry was not at this point the most important quality. It is Henry's spiritual strength, his faith and moral courage which inspire and uphold his whole army. By sheer exaltation and power of spirit he compels his men to achieve the impossible. And this inspired mood does not leave him again, it carries him exuberantly through v. ii. to the union of England and France. No spiritual significance? Surely,

The gods approve
The depth, and not the tumult, of the soul.

8. Historical Sources

It is customary to assume that Holinshed's Chronicles, 1587, provided the main source from which Shakespeare drew his historical material for Henry V, and there are certain passages such as Canterbury's speech on the Salic Law and part of Henry's speeches to the conspirators (ii. ii. 166-81) in which this assumption is demonstrably true. Shakespeare has taken a phrase from Holinshed which does not occur in the chronicles of other historians, or he has followed him in a historical error of which other writers are innocent.

Holinshed, as is well-known, used Hall's Union of the Two Noble Houses of Lancaster and York, 1548, as a source-book; some passages from Hall he used almost without changing a single word, others he summarized. There are, therefore, some passages in Henry V in which it is impossible to tell whether Shakespeare has used Hall or Holinshed. Most of the historical matter in the play is common to both chroniclers, but of the two Holinshed alone contains the effect of the countermining (iii. ii. 64-8), Westmoreland's
wish for more men (iv. iii. 16-18), the Constable’s seizing of a banner from a trumpeter (iv. ii. 61-2), and Henry’s threat to the French horsemen (iv. vii. 57-67). Generally speaking, Shakespeare’s use of Holinshed suggests that he was working with a copy of the Chronicles open before him. Canterbury’s speech on the Salic Law, for example, is a verse paraphrase in which the least possible alteration has been made to the words of the original.

But Shakespeare used Hall and not Holinshed for the conversation between Henry and his nobles (i. ii. 138-70), and for the Constable’s description of the English soldiers (iv. ii. 16-24, 33-4). In various other places occur phrases or lines obviously based on Hall (see notes to i. i. 4, 72; ii. 102, 125, 138-73, 146-62, 250-97, 263; 2 Chorus 6; ii. iv. 106; iii. vii. 150-4; iv. i. 287; iii. 91-4, 113). Shakespeare, in fact, knew his Hall so well that odd phrases and scraps of information came spontaneously into his thought and reappeared in the play. Even when he is paraphrasing Holinshed, his pen sets down a spelling peculiar to Hall (i. ii. 45, 52). In short, by far the greater part of the historical matter in the play derives from Hall either directly or at second hand through Holinshed with very little alteration.

Shakespeare too caught something of Hall’s ardent spirit. Hall’s stress on the theme of unity—a second title for the play might well be the “Union of the two noble Kingdoms of England and France”—is not to be found in Holinshed.

In Hall the theme of honour, one of the leading themes of the play, is strongly emphasized particularly in Henry’s oration before Agincourt. The contrast between Richard II and Henry V implicit in the balance of the four plays is put forward by Hall (xxxiii). Shakespeare’s debt to Holinshed is in effect superficial, Hall is the source of his inspiration.

There are a few other chronicles and some early biographies of Henry from which Shakespeare must in some way have drawn information.

1 Tillyard, p. 254, mentions this contrast, but it is susceptible of much more detailed treatment than he gives it.
The _Henrici Quinti Angliae Regis Gesta_, usually called the _Gesta_, was written by a chaplain who accompanied Henry on his first campaign. Traces of a possible knowledge of the _Gesta_ occur at III. vi. 44; IV. i. 75; IV. iii. 17, 76. Dover Wilson suggest further traces at III. ii. 57-8; III. iii. 1-43; IV. iii. 111; v. 19, but they do not seem convincing.

Another biography written approximately thirty years after Henry’s death was the _Vita et Gesta Henrici Quinti_, at first erroneously attributed to Elmham and now usually referred to as by Pseudo-Elmham. This work has already been mentioned in connexion with Henry’s conversion (p. xxi). Shakespeare’s phrasing at II. ii. 111-12 recalls a phrase in this work. Although the claims of Stowe’s _Annals_ and of Titus Livius’ _Vita_ have been pressed as sources for the description of Henry’s arrival at Dover, 5 Chorus 9-20, Pseudo-Elmham gives an account much nearer to Shakespeare’s than either. Finally, the episode of the kiss in the wooing scene v. ii. 226, may have been suggested by Pseudo-Elmham’s account of the Melun meeting.

There are two rather doubtful occasions on which material may have been drawn from Elmham’s _Liber Metricus_ (see notes to III. i. 33-4 and IV. iii. 111).

Similarly, the references that Dover Wilson finds to Titus Livius, _Vita Henrici Quinti_, the Frenchmen’s boasts of the excellence of their horses and armour, III. vii. 1 ff; the Constable’s seizing of a banner from a trumpeter, IV. ii. 60; and the description of Henry’s arrival at Dover already mentioned, 5 Chorus 9-20, all seem doubtful whether they are drawn direct from the Latin version or from the English translation of 1513, _The First English Life of King Henry the Fifth_. On the other hand, a much more likely borrowing occurs in 4 Chorus 28-47.

A few possible borrowings remain: from the _Brut_ in I. ii. 255; from Fabyan’s _Chronicle_, 1516 in IV. i. 307; and from the French chronicler Le Fèvre. Le Fèvre’s chronicle has already been mentioned (p. xxvii) as a possible source for Henry’s treatment of the conspirators. Le Fèvre was present with Henry at Agincourt, and his comparison of Henry’s discipline with that of the Romans is curiously parallel to Fluellen’s views in IV. i. 66-84.
9. Previous Plays on Henry V

The history of Henry V had been dramatized before 1599. We know nothing of the play Nashe had in mind when he referred to “Henrie the fifth . . . represented on the Stage, leading the French king prisoner, and forcing both him and the Dolphin to sweare fealty” (Works, ed. McKerrow, 1904, I. 213), nor of “harye the Vth”, a new play which the Admiral’s men were acting from the winter of 1595 to July 1596 (Chambers, Eliz. Stage, II. 144-5). It is impossible to say, therefore, whether Shakespeare was in any way influenced by these plays. But it has been claimed that he was indebted to another play, the Famous Victories of Henry V, though recent criticism inclines to the belief that his debt was not to the Famous Victories as we have it, but to the original play on which the Famous Victories was based.

The Famous Victories, entered in the Stationers’ Registers on 14 May 1594, survives in an edition dated 1598, which states on its title page, “As it was plaide by the Queenes Maiesties Players”. It is clearly a “bad quarto”. With the exception of the scene between Henry and Katharine, the text is so corrupt and full of repetitions that it may even have been reconstructed from an author’s plot of which the so-called Philander, King of Thrace, is the only one extant.

The general soundness of the wooing scene may be accounted for by supposing that the boy who took Katharine’s part helped in the reconstruction. The original play was probably the one referred to in Tarlton’s Jests, 1638, Sig. C 23 in which Tarleton himself took the clown’s part and deputized on one occasion for the Lord Chief Justice. This would put the play before 1588, the year in which Tarleton died.

Dover Wilson considers that the Famous Victories is a version of two plays belonging to the Queen’s men which were compressed into one for performance in the provinces. The original two plays, he suggests, were acquired about 1592 by Lord Strange’s men in the same way as they had acquired Greene’s Orlando Furioso. Shakespeare, therefore, could have drawn upon these two original plays for 1 and 2
Henry IV and Henry V. However, this may be, the Famous Victories and the first quarto of Henry V came into being in a similar way to earn a little money for dishonest members of the company.

The play covers the same historical period as Shakespeare’s trilogy, but makes no mention of the Percy rebellion, the conspiracy against Henry V, and the siege of Harfleur. It is closest to Henry V in the tennis balls incident and in the wooing scene (see Appendix, p. 165). There are a few verbal and other similarities (i. ii. 239, 255, 306; iv. vii. 83-5), but rather fewer than between it and 1 and 2 Henry IV. The scene between Dericke and the French soldier has obvious resemblances to Pistol’s capture of M. le Fer.

On the whole, it seems best to adopt the view first put forward by Morgan (Some Problems of Shakespeare’s ‘Henry IV’, 1924) that resemblances between Shakespeare’s three plays and the Famous Victories have arisen because all four plays have borrowed in varying measure from an earlier play now lost.

10. THE NATURE OF THE QUARTO AND FOLIO TEXTS—
EVIDENCE OF ALTERATIONS IN THE FOLIO TEXT—
FALSTAFF ORIGINALLY INCLUDED.

Four early texts of Henry V exist, three quarto editions Q1 (1600), Q2 (1602), Q3 (1619, title page 1608), and the First Folio, F1 (1623). Q2 and Q3 are reprints with some few corrections of Q1, and the nature of the corrections indicates that they were set up independently from Q1.

Although the origin and nature of the Q text has aroused much discussion, it seems evident that it is derived from the same text that was later printed in the Folio. It is a “bad” quarto, that is a corrupt version of the play presumably concocted by one or two members of the company from memory, or perhaps taken down by a stenographer in the audience to sell unofficially to a printer. In spite of Price’s contention to the contrary,1 there is no

1 Text of Henry V, 1920.
convincing evidence that shorthand played a part in the transmission of the Q text; on the contrary, there is a great deal of evidence that the text was compiled from memory.¹

The speeches of Exeter and Gower are much closer to the text than those of any others, and it has been suspected that the actors taking these parts in the play were the ones who put together the Q text and betrayed the Company by selling it to Millington and Busby. Certain omissions show that the play had been cut for compression, possibly for censorship, and to reduce the number of actors' parts. Generally there is a lowering of pitch, a substitution of cliché and the common currency of daily speech for the more heightened style of the Folio.

In brief, the Q version may well be based on a cut form of the play used by the company for a reduced cast on tour in the provinces.

Readings from the Q text, therefore, cannot be relied upon to correct the Folio, though occasionally it may, by preserving the general sense of a passage, lead to an improved reading of a passage that is doubtful in the Folio (see note to ii. i. 36, "here").

The Folio text forms the basis of all modern editions. It has certain characteristics which suggest that it was set up from Shakespeare's own draft, or "soul papers", from which the playhouse scribe frequently made an acting or "prompt" copy. Thus there is no scene division (the erroneous act division was undoubtedly added in the printing house),² one or two unusually descriptive stage directions, "scaling ladders at Harfleur", "the king with his poore soldiers", together with some unusual spellings ("mer-vaillous", ii. i. 46; "Deules", ii. iii. 32; "Deule", ii. iii. 36; "aunchiant", iii. ii. 82; "moth", iv. i. 186; "vawting", v. ii. 139, etc.) are presumably the work of the author, since a professional playhouse scribe would tend to simplify unusual spellings in his copy for the sake of clarity. Finally, there are a number of misprints and errors which

¹ Duthie's view that there are bibliographical links between Q and F texts is inconclusive. See his The Bad Quarto of Hamlet, p. 53, n. 2.
can be corrected by reference to Shakespeare's style of letter formation¹ ("mare" (name), ii. i. 25; "here" (hewne), ii. i. 36; "pasterns" (postures), iii. vii. 12).

On the other hand, these spellings and errors together with some colloquialisms and oaths are scattered unevenly throughout the play. Of colloquialisms in the sixty-three lines of ii. iii. there are about six, while in the whole of Act i there are about four. Some inequality of distribution is due to the comic or formal nature of the scenes, but inequality in the comic scenes which are otherwise comparable is unexpected. Again, there are a few errors that are more likely to be committed by a scribe than by a compositor: the anticipation of a word or part of a word, "th", i. ii. 74; "And", i. ii. 212; "Noblish", iii. i. 17; "with", iv. vii. 80; and the misplacing of two lines, iv. iii. 13-14.

While the assumption that the copy was the author's "foul papers" is generally acceptable, it is not impossible that some portions may have been a playhouse transcript.

The F text itself has been disturbed,² and the main disturbances are clearly the result of alterations made to those parts of the play involving Pistol and his "irregular humorists", Fluellen, the "internationals", and the three soldiers, Bates, Court and Williams. The evidence is of various kinds and may perhaps best be dealt with in the order in which it appears in the play.

The Chorus to Act ii states that the scene is now transferred to Southampton, thence to France and finally back once more to England (ll. 35-8) ending with a couplet:

for if we may;

We'll not offend one stomach with our play.

Then a further couplet, obviously added later, warns the audience that the move to Southampton is not to take place "till the king comes forth", i.e. ii. ii. What may be called the original Chorus describes an act of three scenes, (i) in

² For a more detailed treatment of the textual disturbances in F and their implications, see the editor's article "With Sir John in it", M.L.R. XLI, No. 3, July 1946, pp. 237-45, where the view that Falstaff appeared in the original draft of the play was first suggested.
Southampton, (ii) in France, (iii) in England, but as the act is now, there are four scenes, (i) in London, (ii) in Southampton, (iii) in London, (iv) in France, so that even the final couplet does not accurately describe the course of events. Now there are in ii. i and iii, a number of spellings of the kind Shakespeare used¹ ("Mervailous", ii. i. 46; "Deules", ii. iii. 32) together with errors perhaps due to the misreading of Shakespeare's hand ("mare", ii. i. 25; "hewne", ii. i. 36; "Table", ii. iii. 17) and the frequent use (fourteen times) of the colloquialism "a’" (he) by the Hostess and the Boy in ii. iii. The only other place where "a’" is used with frequency is in the Boy’s soliloquy in iii. ii (four times). This suggests that ii. i. and iii. are very close to Shakespeare’s autograph, and that they are additions taking the place of an original scene iii some of which is perhaps incorporated in the present ii. i.

Fluellen’s appearance at iii. ii. 20 raises difficulties. He cannot remain on the stage during the Boy’s soliloquy, yet he is given no re-entry notice with Gower (i. 57), and this failure to indicate the re-entry of a character does not occur elsewhere in the play. (The omission of entry notices, for French or English Lords on one or two occasions also signifies alterations.) He is unannounced, and the abject terror in Pistol’s appeal (ii. 22-5) loses much of its humour unless the audience knows who Fluellen is. Ancient Pistol, it will be remembered, is a sutler (ii. i. iii. 11-12) and it is certainly odd to find him in the breach with assault troops.

All this suggests that the scene as far as the Boy’s soliloquy (i. 28) has been altered, and the Boy’s soliloquy itself has been added, probably to prepare the audience for the deaths of Bardolph and Nym.

The "international" episode that immediately follows is certainly additional. It includes oaths which would not have escaped the eye of the Master of Revels unless the passage had been added after he gave his licence to act. Fluellen’s speeches here contain only one "p" for "b", although elsewhere with one exception (iii. vi. 1-60),

¹ On this see Greg, "Elizabethan Printer and his Copy", Library, 4th Series, IV. 1924, pp. 102-18.
he uses it freely. Moreover, the scene has no links with anything else in the play, and Jamy and Macmorris do not appear again.

m. vi. 1-60 mentioned above contains Pistol’s plea for Bardolph’s life and Fluellen’s discourse on Fortune. Again the lack of “p’s” for “b’s” suggests that it has been added.

The Chorus of Act IV describes vividly the night before Agincourt and thence “our scene must to the battle fly”. Accordingly scene i shows Henry and his nobles early in the morning (ll. 3, 6, 26, 85) yet later Henry’s conversation with the soldiers and the wager with Williams obviously take place the previous night (ll. 220, 234). Darkness, too, must obviously be necessary for the success of his incognito adventures.

Duthie and Wilson note that iv. i. 30-2 are a preparation for a soliloquy which in fact does not take place until l. 295, closely after another soliloquy ll. 234-90. At l. 293 Henry gives Erpingham the same order he had previously given to his brothers, ll. 25-7.

Finally, the resolution of the glove episode is confused, for Fluellen should surely have recognized Williams and remembered the challenge upon which his opinion had been asked only a few moments before.

v. i. contains Pistol’s eating of the leek. It is self-contained in that it does not arise out of Pistol’s insults to Fluellen in m. vi, but out of some subsequent offence (v. i. 5-12). But its conclusion is astonishing. Pistol threatens revenge, “all hell shall stir”, yet the moment Fluellen and Gower have gone, he cringes in abjectness and unexpectedly complains:

Doth Fortune play the huswife with me now?
News have I that my Doll is dead i’ the spital
Of malady of France;
And there my rendezvous is quite cut off.
Old I do wax, and from my weary limbs
Honour is cudgelled.

It was Doll indeed who went to the spital (m. i. 78-81), but Pistol, married to Nell, can hardly claim as his the lady
who had already tartly informed him that she was "meat for" his master, Falstaff. So far there has been no reference to Pistol's age, and he has given no indication that would justify the statement, "Old I do wax". The one person in whose mouth this speech would be appropriate is Sir John Falstaff.

The conclusion is inescapable; Falstaff originally accompanied Henry to France, but for some reason or other it was decided to change this and to kill him off. Act ii. iii was then written and ii. i, perhaps embodying part of an earlier scene, was written to prepare for it. The rest of the underplot was adapted so that Pistol could assume much of the mantle of his master. It is possible that Act iii contained a comic scene before Harfleur of which we have left some portions of the opening dialogue; the rest has been replaced by the Boy's soliloquy and the "international" scene. Act iv may have contained nocturnal, incognito adventures of Henry which brought him into conflict with Falstaff. How far the conversation with the soldiers and the glove episode contain matter from the original form of the play is impossible to say. Falstaff, true to his form in i and 2 Henry IV, captured M. le Fer and in v. i was humiliated by Fluellen.

II. THE "REJECTION OF FALSTAFF"—A LINK WITH THE MERRY WIVES.

Shakespeare then did fulfil the promise in the epilogue of 2 Henry IV to continue the story "with Sir John in it". But why was Falstaff's part removed? It is most unlikely that the removal was made for artistic and moral reasons, or because Shakespeare's company were, from 1598 to 1602, without the comedian Kemp who presumably played Falstaff in the two earlier plays. The only possible answer lies in the continued opposition of Oldcastle's descendants, the Brooke family. There is much evidence that the name Oldcastle persisted in the mind of the public in spite of the alterations to i and 2 Henry IV, and it is probable that the Brooke family, realizing that they could not stop people from calling Falstaff Oldcastle, determined to prevent Falstaff
appearing on the stage in a third play, and in this they were successful.

This, however, is not quite the end of the affair. It is safe to assume that Shakespeare's audience was well acquainted with the Oldcastle-Falstaff story. It must have been one of the best jokes of the decade in London. One suspects that the players let it be known that Henry V had also run counter to the wishes of the Brooke family, and that any shortcomings were to be attributed to the activities of its members. In this way they both advertised the play and safeguarded themselves.

The illness and death of Falstaff look like the result of an agreement with the Brookes that Shakespeare should not introduce Falstaff in person, but would be permitted to give the old rogue an ending that might, in some measure of the letter if not in the spirit, fulfil the promise in the Epilogue to 2 Henry IV, "for anything I know Falstaff shall die of a sweat". The Hostess's description is immortal, and the whole play is deepened in tone as a result. Yet the temptation to have one last jest at the expense of Oldcastle was irresistible. There could be no doubt that the audience would be breathlessly savouring every word for a topical hit. It came. The hostess, admitting in reply to the Boy, that Falstaff "did in some sort, indeed, handle women", adds magnificently "but then he was rheumatic, and talked of the whore of Babylon". The F spelling "rumatique" gives the pronunciation θ (compare the quibble in Julius Caesar, i. ii. 155, on "room" and "Rome"). The insulting reference to the Church of Rome in "whore of Babylon" completes the last glance at the Lollard Oldcastle.

This continued opposition of the Brooke family gives significance to the story of Queen Elizabeth's interest in the Merry Wives: "This comedy was written at her command, and by her direction, and she was so eager to see it acted that she commanded it to be finished in fourteen days" (Dennis, Epistle Dedicatory, The Comical Gallant, 1702). In other words, the Queen, well aware of what had happened to Henry V, and perhaps yielding to requests, so far overruled the protests of the Brooke family as to give royal authority for the revival of Falstaff in a setting of domestic
comedy. The result was the Merry Wives, in which Shakespeare rang the last changes on the Oldcastle jest. To Simple who has asked to speak with Falstaff the Host replies, "There's his chamber, his house, his castle ..." (iv. v. 6-7). But the joke that must have brought the house down was the jealous Ford's selection of a nom de guerre by which to be known to Falstaff "tell him my name is Brook, only for a jest". And the Host's reply drives the point home, "... and thy name shall be Brook. It is a merry knight. . . ."

One can imagine too, the fun that the actor who played Falstaff extracted from the latter's toying with the name Brook (ii. ii. 152-61). Indeed one wonders whether there is not some sly allusiveness in the pursuit of Falstaff by the jealous Ford-Brook in defending the honour of his house.1

12. Bibliographical Note

A number of books and periodicals are referred to by using either the name of the author or a shortened title. Normally the name of the author is used. In the list of full titles below shortened titles used are given in square brackets:

Chelidonius, T. A most excellent Hystorie of the Institution and firste beginning of Christian Princes . . . Wherunto is annexed a treatise of Peace and Warre, and another of the dignitie of Mariage, tr. James Chilister, 1571.
Cooper, T. Thesaurus linguæ Romanœ et Britannicae, 1584.
Daniel, S. The first foure books of the civile wars, 1595.
Ehmham, T. Liber Metricus de Henrico Quinto, ed. C. A. Cole in Memorials of Henry V. Rolls Series, 1858. [Liber Metricus.]

1 Were the Brookes responsible for the change of Q Brooke to Broome in F?
Reference in the textual footnotes to earlier editions of Shakespeare is made by citing the name of the editor. A few later editions such as the Warwick and the first Arden are referred to by the name of the editor of Henry V, i.e. Moore Smith and Evans respectively.

The following is a list of earlier editions of Shakespeare to which reference is made:

Hanmer, T. Works. 6 vols. 1743-4.
Warburton and Pope. Works. 8 vols. 1747.
Johnson, S. Plays. 8 vols. 1765.
Capell, E. Comedies, Histories and Tragedies. 10 vols. 1768.
Rann, J. Plays. 1786-94.
Knight, C. Works. 8 vols. 1842.
Dyce, A. Works. 6 vols. 1857.
Staunton, H. Works. 3 vols. 1858-60.
INTRODUCTION


Kightley, T. *Plays.* 1864.


Craig, W. S. *Works.* (Oxford Shakespeare.) 1904. (ed. 1916.)


DRAMATIS PERSONÆ

King Henry the Fifth.
Duke of Gloucester, Brothers to the King.
Duke of Bedford,
Duke of Exeter, Uncle to the King.
Duke of York, Cousin to the King.
Earls of Salisbury, Westmoreland, and Warwick.
Archbishop of Canterbury.
Bishop of Ely.
Earl of Cambridge.
Lord Scroop.
Sir Thomas Grey.
Sir Thomas Erpingham, Gower, Fluellen, Macmorris, Jamy,
Officers in King Henry's Army.
Bates, Court, Williams, Soldiers in the same.
Pistol, Nym, Bardolph.
Boy.
A Herald.

Charles the Sixth, King of France.
Lewis, the Dauphin.
Dukes of Burgundy, Orleans, Berri, Bretagne and Bourbon.
The Constable of France.
Rambures and Grandpré, French Lords.
Montjoy, a French Herald.
Governor of Harfleur.
Ambassadors to the King of England.

Isabel, Queen of France.
Katharine, Daughter to Charles and Isabel.
Alice, A Lady attending on the Princess.
Hostess of a tavern in Eastcheap, formerly Mistress Quickly, and now
married to Pistol.

Lords, Ladies, Officers, French and English Soldiers, Citizens, Mess-
sengers, and Attendants.

Chorus.

Scene: England; afterwards France.
Henry V] born in 1387 at Monmouth, the eldest son of Henry IV. He may have been educated at Queen's College, Oxford. During his father's banishment Richard II took him into his own household and showed him favour. For most of his father's reign he was active in campaigns against the Welsh and the rebels. On his accession, 1413, he demanded the restoration of certain French territories to the English crown, and in pursuit of his claim made three separate campaigns against the French, the first ending with the victory of Agincourt, 1415, the second ending in the Treaty of Troyes, 1420, by which he became regent and heir to the French throne, and was married to Katharine, the third ending with Henry's death from dysentery at Bois de Vincennes in 1422.

Duke of Gloucester] born 1391, the fourth and youngest son of Henry IV. Unprincipled in character yet with scholarly tastes. He was expelled by Alençon at Agincourt, but saved by Henry V in person and was later present at Troyes. He died in prison, 1447.

Duke of Bedford] John of Lancaster, born 1390, the third son of Henry IV. He was appointed Lieutenant of England during the first French campaign, but took over reinforcements to Henry during the second campaign. He was an extremely able general and of great integrity of character. He died at Rouen in 1435.

Duke of Exeter] Thomas Beaufort, youngest son of John of Gaunt by Catherine Swynford. In 1410 he was Chancellor and after Henry V's accession he went on an embassy to France. After the capture of Harfleur he was made governor of it; there is some doubt whether he was present at Agincourt. He was made Duke of Exeter in 1416 and was present at the signing of the Treaty of Troyes, 1422. He died at Greenwich, 1427.


Earl of Salisbury] Thomas Montacute, born 1588, eldest son of John Montacute, Earl of Salisbury. He was employed in negotiations with the French by Henry V and was present at Agincourt. He was an extremely skilful commander and a popular leader. He was killed at the siege of Orleans, 1428.

Earl of Westmoreland] Ralph Neville, born 1564, son of John, Earl of Westmoreland. He became Warden of the West Marches, and supported Bolingbroke against Richard II and the Percies. He remained in England to defend the Marches during Henry's French campaigns, and died in 1425.

Earl of Warwick] Richard Beauchamp, born 1381. He accompanied Henry to Harfleur, and then returned to England with prisoners and spoils. He was present at the meeting at Troyes. After Henry's death the infant Henry VI was committed to his care. He died at Rouen, 1439.

Archbishop of Canterbury] Henry Chichele, born 1562, bishop of St. David's 1408, was employed as an ambassador to France by Henry V in 1413. A year later he was elevated to the Archbishopric of Canterbury, and so did not sit as Archbishop in the Leicester Parliament as Hall alleges. He founded All Soul's College, Oxford and made benefactions to that university and to Canterbury Cathedral. He died in 1443.

Bishop of Ely] John Fordham, Bishop of Durham, 1582. In 1588 he was translated to Ely, where he died in 1425.

Earl of Cambridge] Richard, the second son of Edmund, Duke of
York. He was created Earl of Cambridge by Henry V in 1414. In 1415 he plotted to place the Earl of March on the throne, but the plot was discovered and he was executed.

*Lord Scroop* [Henry, third Baron Scroop of Masham, born c. 1376. For a time he was Treasurer, but after Henry V's accession he was sent on an embassy to France. He was executed in 1415.]

*Sir Thomas Grey* [of Heton, Northumberland, the son-in-law of the Earl of Westmoreland. He was executed in 1415.]

*Sir Thomas Erpingham* [of Erpingham, Norfolk, born 1357. A distinguished soldier and a Steward of the Royal Household. He ordered the English battle-line at Agincourt, and gave the signal to attack. After bestowing many benefactions on Norwich, he died 1428.]

*Charles VI* [King of France, born 1368. He became insane, and this incapacity led to strife for power between the dukes of Burgundy and Orleans. He was not present either at Agincourt or at Troyes. He died in 1422, two months after the death of Henry V.]

*Lewis, the Dauphin*, the eldest son of Charles VI. He was not present at Agincourt, and died soon afterwards in 1415.

*Duke of Burgundy* [The Duke of Burgundy mentioned in m. v. 42 and rv. viii. 99, is John the Fearless, born 1371, murdered in 1419. His son, Philip the Good, born 1396, the "Charolois" of m. v. 45, and the Duke of Burgundy of v. ii, was not present at Agincourt. After the murder of his father at the instigation of the Dauphin Charles, he supported the English and helped to bring about the Treaty of Troyes. He died in 1467.]

*Duke of Orleans* [Charles, the nephew of Charles VI, born 1391. In 1406 he married Isabella, widow of Richard II. He was involved in the factions and disputes with the Burgundians. At Agincourt he was taken prisoner and spent twenty-five years in captivity at Windsor and Ponsfort, during which time he wrote some delightful French lyrics. He was ransomed in 1440 and died in 1465.]

*Duke of Bourbon* [John, uncle of Charles VI. He was captured at Agincourt, and died in England in 1433.]

*Constable of France* [Charles de la Bret, son of Charles, king of Navarre and half-brother of Henry V. He commanded the French army at Agincourt, where he was killed.]

*Isabel, Queen of France*, daughter of Stephen II of Bavaria, born 1370. She was present at the negotiations for the Treaty of Troyes. Her character was dissolute, and she died in poverty, 1435.

*Katharine* [of Valois, daughter of Charles VI, Queen of England, 1420-22, born 1401 and mother of Henry VI. By her second marriage to Owen Tudor she became the grandmother of Henry VIII.]

*Duke of Berry* [John, son of John II of France. He fought at Poiets and was a member of Charles VI's Council. He died in 1416.]

*Duke of Bretagne* [John V de Montfort, actually step-brother to Henry by Henry IV's second wife, John's mother. He was present at Agincourt. Died 1442.]

*Duke of Beaumont* [A French noble killed at Agincourt.]

*Lord Rambur* [Master of the Crossbows at Agincourt, where he was killed.]

These notes have been drawn from various sources, but I should like to acknowledge a particular debt to W. H. Thomson, *Shakespeare's Characters*, 1951.
THE LIFE OF HENRY THE FIFTH

Enter Prologue

O, for a Muse of fire, that would ascend
The brightest heaven of invention;
A kingdom for a stage, princes to act
And monarchs to behold the swelling scene!
Then should the warlike Harry, like himself,
Assume the port of Mars; and at his heels,
Leash'd in like hounds, should famine, sword, and fire
Crouch for employment. But pardon, gentle all,

9. spirits that hath] F; spirits that have Staunton; Spirit, that hath F 4.

Enter Prologue] i.e. the actor who spoke the prologue. He normally wore a long black velvet cloak. See Heywood, Four Prentices of London, 1615, Prologue 2, “Doc you not know that I am the Prologue? Do you not see this long blacke velvet cloke upon my backe?” Later, l. 32, he announces that he is also to play the Chorus. Moore Smith, and Creizenach, English Drama in the Age of Shakespeare, 1916, p. 276, have both noted that in mood and substance the choruses in H5 are unique in Elizabethan plays.

1-2. O ... invention] Fire, believed to be the lightest of the four elements composing man, was associated with poets whose “erected wit” was naturally urged by a “desire, lift upward and divine”. In the Ptolemaic cosmology fire ascended in its purest and brightest form to the ninth and highest sphere, the empyrean, loosely called Heaven by Christian writers.

Shakespeare’s epic-like invocation embraces the fiery, warlike nature of his theme, the divine origin of poetry, and the sublimity of the conception he hopes to achieve. More profoundly, however, the imagery symbolizes and emphasizes the theme of royalty explicit in ll. 4-5. Chelidonius (see Introduction, p. xvii) notes that the imperial heaven is the prince “above all other heauens”, and fire has “in it a certain similitude of Royaltie” (p. 17).

2. invention] (a) A rhetorical term for the discovery of topics, (b) a work of the imagination. Here = poetic creation. Cf. “The Poet ... citeth not authorities of other Histories, but even for his entry calleth the sweete Muses to inspire into him a good invention” (Sidney, Apologie, p. 39).

4. swelling] magnificent.

5. like himself] presented in a manner worthy of his incomparable greatness. H. T. Price (R.E.S., 1940, XVI, 178-81) distinguishes two main meanings of this phrase, (i) incomparable, unique, (ii) worthy of such a person.

6. port] bearing.

The flat unraised spirits that hath dar’d
On this unworthy scaffold to bring forth
So great an object: can this cockpit hold
The vastly fields of France? or may we cram
Within this wooden O the very casques
That did affright the air at Agincourt?
O, pardon! since a crooked figure may
Attest in little place a million;
And let us, to this great accompt,
On your imaginary forces work.

that the goddess of battell, called
Bellona, had three handmaidens,
ever of necessitie attending upon hir,
as blood, fire, and famine”. Talbot,
IV. ii. 10-11, threatens Bourdeau with his “three attendants,
Lean famine, quartering steel, and
climbing fire”.

9. *flat unraised spirits*] dull, un-
inspired actors and playwright.

9. *hath*] Shakespeare frequently
uses a singular form of the verb with
a plural subject (see Abbott, *Sh.
Grammar*, §§ 247, 332-5).

10. *scaffold*] a technical term for a
stage. Cf. *Troll. i. iii. 156, “scaff-
folage”.

13. *this wooden O*] this small wooden
circle. As Dover Wilson notes, this
was probably the Curtain Theatre and
not the Globe. The Essex references in
the Chorus to Act V can hardly
have been written later than June
1599, while the Globe was not com-
pleted until August or September of
that year (see Introduction, p. xi).

13. *O*] a round spot or small
circle.

13. *the very casques*] “even the
casques or helmets; much less the
men by whom they were worn”
(Malone).

iv. v. 4, “appalled air”, and
Susenbrotus, *Epitome Trisporum*, 1565,
p. 17, “Coelum territam armis”.

15. *O, pardon!*] Part of the playful
quibble on “O”, “crooked figure”
and “ciphers” (ll. 13, 15, 17). Per-
haps it may be interpreted freely:
“O”, did I say, I crave your
pardon for mentioning so worthless a
figure (theatre) but, as you all know,
a mere nought.

15-16. *since . . . million*] since a
mere nought may in the humble unit’s
position increase the value of a
number to the million range. Dover
Wilson quotes Peckle, *Edward I* (Malone
Soc.), II. 204-5, “‘Tis but a Cipher in
Agrum [= a cipher in algorism or
arithmetic = o], And it hath made
of 10000 pounds, 1000000 pounds’.
Cf. also *Wint. i. ii. 6-9*.

Baret, *A briefe Instructi on of Aryth-
metike* (in *Alucaria*, 1580) makes the
line of thought clear. Sig. A8r,
“. . . o called a ciphere, which is no
Significatue figure of it selfe, but
maketh the other figures wherewith it
is joined, to increase more in value
by their place . . . in euerie Com-
pound, or Digit number the first
place is from the right hand to the
left, and there you must first begin to
count the value of your number.”

17. *ciphers . . . accompl] mere
nothings (noughts) “in comparison
with this great (a) sum total (b)
story” (Dover Wilson).

18. *imaginary forces*] powers of
imagination. Aldis Wright notes a
parallel in the Chorus to *Captain
Thomas Stukely* (acted 1595):
“Your gentle favours must we needs
entreat
Suppose within the girdle of these walls
Are now confin'd two mighty monarchies,
Whose high upreared and abutting fronts
The perilous narrow ocean parts asunder:
Pierce out our imperfections with your thoughts;
Into a thousand parts divide one man,
And make imaginary puissance;
Think, when we talk of horses, that you see them
Printing their proud hoofs i' the receiving earth;
For 'tis your thoughts that now must deck our kings,
Carry them here and there, jumping o'er times,
Turning the accomplishment of many years
Into an hour-glass: for the which supply,
Admit me Chorus to this history;
Who prologue-like your humble patience pray,
Gently to hear, kindly to judge, our play.  

[Exit.

21. high upreared] Pope; high, up-reared F.

For rude presenting such a royal fight
Which more imagination must supply
Than all our utmost strength can reach unto."

22. perilous narrow ocean] the English Channel. Its reputation for shipwrecks was well known, cf. Mer.V. m. i. 2-6; John v. iii. 11; Weakest Goeth to the Wall, ll. 2306-9.

25. puissance] army, forces. Here it is trisyllabic.

29. them] variously interpreted as referring to (a) thoughts, (b) kings. The former seems preferable, but see 5 Chorus, 8-9.
30. many years] the events of the play extend from 1414 to 1420.
31. for the which supply] to aid you in which.
ACT I

SCENE I.—London. An Antechamber in the King’s Palace.

Enter the Archbishop of Canterbury and the Bishop of Ely.

Cant. My lord, I’ll tell you; that self bill is urg’d, Which in the eleventh year of the last king’s reign Was like, and had indeed against us pass’d, But that the scrambling and unquiet time Did push it out of farther question.

Ely. But how, my lord, shall we resist it now?

Cant. It must be thought on. If it pass against us, We lose the better half of our possession; For all the temporal lands which men devout By testament have given to the Church Would they strip from us; being valued thus: As much as would maintain, to the king’s honour, Full fifteen earls and fifteen hundred knights, Six thousand and two hundred good esquires; And, to relief of lazars and weak age, Of indigent faint souls past corporal toil.

ACT I

Scene 1


ACT I

Scene 1

The act divisions are discussed in the Introduction, p. xxxix. The scene divisions are the work of various editors.

London] According to Holinshed the presentation of the tennis balls was made at Kenilworth, while the other incidents in the scene took place at Leicester, 1414. As there is no indication of locality, it seems better to follow Pope’s suggestion and place it in London.

A hundred almshouses right well supplied;
And to the coffers of the king beside,
A thousand pounds by the year. Thus runs the bill.

_Ely._ This would drink deep.

_Cant._ 'Twould drink the cup and all.

_Ely._ But what prevention?

_Cant._ The king is full of grace and fair regard.

_Ely._ And a true lover of the holy Church.

_Cant._ The courses of his youth promis'd it not.

The breath no sooner left his father's body,
But that his wildness, mortified in him,
Seem'd to die too; yea, at that very moment,
Consideration like an angel came,
And whipp'd th' offending Adam out of him,
Leaving his body as a Paradise,
T' envelop and contain celestial spirits.
Never was such a sudden scholar made;

too_ is an echo of Henry's words to his brothers in _2H4_ v. ii. 123-4,
"My father is gone wild into his grave,
For in his tomb lie my affections".
While the chronicles generally and the _Famous Victories_ refer to Henry's
change of heart on his accession as a "rebirth" or "putting on the new
man", only Elmhams _Liber Metricus_ has anything resembling Shakespeare's
treatment of the matter. It describes the change, "rex hominem
veterem sic renovere". Canterbury's speech with its elegant transitions is clearly, and most appropriated,
based on the Baptismal Service of the _Book of Common Prayer_. Cf.
"he, being dead unto sin . . . &
being buried with Christ in his death,
maye crucifye the olde man, and
utterly abolyse the whole bodye
of sinne, . . . ". Again, "grante
that the olde Adam in this child
may be so buryed, that the new
man may be raised up in him". And," . . . that all carnall affec-
tions maye die in him, and that all
thynges belonginge to the Spirite
maye lyve and growe in him" (edn. 1560).


28-30. like . . . paradise] see _Genesis_
iii. 23-4.

29. offending Adam] (a) the Adam
of the Garden of Eden, (b) the " old
Adam " or innate wickedness.

30. Paradise] (a) Eden, also called
Paradise, (b) Paradise or Heaven,
the home of celestial spirits. In
Renaissance views man was a small
world (microcosm) which epitomized
the ninefold shell of the heavens
(macrocosm) around him. Canterbury,
following his quibble over Adam, ingeniously introduces the
Christian Paradise in place of the
normal macrocosm, and suggests that
the new Henry now imbued with the
Heavenly Spirit epitomises Paradise
itself.

32. scholar] Cf. Nenna, _Nennio, or a
Treatise of Nobility_, 1595, pp. 87-8,
"It is certaine that the value &
excellency of men, proceedeth either
Never came reformation in a flood,
With such a heady currance, scouring faults;
Nor never Hydra-headed wilfulness
So soon did lose his seat—and all at once—
As in this king.

Ely. We are blessed in the change.
Cant. Hear him but reason in divinity,
And, all-admiring, with an inward wish
You would desire the king were made a prelate:
Hear him debate of commonwealth affairs,
You would say it hath been all in all his study:
List his discourse of war, and you shall hear
A fearful battle render’d you in music:
Turn him to any cause of policy,
The Gordian knot of it he will unloose,
Familiar as his garter; that, when he speaks,
The air, a charter’d libertine, is still,

34. currance F 1; currant F 2; current F 4.

from learning or armes”. The stock Renaissance phrase was “Tam Marti quam Mercurio” (I Return from Parnassus, l. 929).
33-4. flood . . . faults] Possibly an allusion to the cleansing of the Augean stables by Hercules who diverted a river through them.
35. Hydra-headed] many-headed, persistent. The Hydra of Lerna was a nine-headed monster slain by Hercules. Each time a head was cut off two grew in its place until Iolaus, Hercules’ companion, thrust a burning torch into the bleeding stump.
36. seat] throne, power.
38. reason in divinity] Probably a reminiscence of Henry’s theological discussions with the imprisoned Lollard, Oldcastle, before the events of the play. Holinshed records that Henry “right earnestlie exhorted him, and louinglie admonished him to reconcile himselfe to God and to his laws” (III. 544).
44. render’d . . . music] narrated with moving eloquence.
45. cause of policy] intricate problem of statecraft.
46. Gordian knot] To cure their misfortunes, the Phrygians by the advice of the oracle, elected as king the first man to approach the temple of Jupiter in a wagon. This was the peasant Gordius, who thereupon dedicated his wagon to Jupiter. The knot which fastened the yoke to the shaft of the wagon was extremely intricate, and it was believed that whoever untied it would rule over Asia. Alexander the Great cut the knot with his sword and declared that the legend referred to him (Arrian, Anabasis, ii. iii.).
48. charter’d libertiae] licensed FREEman. Cf. AYL n. vii. 47-8, “I must have liberty
Withal, as large a charter as the wind.”
And the mute wonder lurketh in men’s ears,
To steal his sweet and honey’d sentences;
So that the art and practic part of life
Must be the mistress to this theoretic:
Which is a wonder how his grace should glean it,
Since his addiction was to courses vain;
His companies unletter’d, rude, and shallow;
His hours fill’d up with riots, banquets, sports;
And never noted in him any study,
Any retirement, any sequestration
From open haunts and popularity.

Ely. The strawberry grows underneath the nettle,
And wholesome berries thrive and ripen best
Neighbour’d by fruit of baser quality:
And so the prince obscur’d his contemplation
Under the veil of wildness; which, no doubt,
Grew like the summer grass, fastest by night,
Unseen, yet crescive in his faculty.

49. wonder] F; wand’rer Staunton’s conjecture.

49-50. mute . . . sentence] i.e. the sound that was actually recreated in the ear.
49. wonder wonderer.
51. art and practic part of life] practice and experience of living.
52. mistress] authoress, patroness.
59. open haunts] places frequented by common people.
60. strawberry . . . nettle] Cf. T. Hill, The Profitable Arte of Gardeninge, 1572, fol. 124, “Strawberye . . . aptly growth in shadowie places, and rather loyeth vnder the shadow of other herbes, than by growing alone”. Modern horticultural research has verified the accuracy of this observation. An apt analogy in the mouth of Ely, whose strawberry garden at Ely Place, Holborn, was well known. Cf. R 3 m. iv. 91-2.
61-2. wholesome berries . . . quality] Moore Smith quotes from Florio’s translation of Montaigne’s Essays (p. 581): “If it hapned (as some gardners say) that those Roses and Violets are ever the sweeter & more odoriferous that grow neere vnder Garlike and Onions, for so much as they suck and draw all the ill-saours of the ground unto them.” Prothero, in Shakespeare’s England, I. 373 gives a different explanation.
65-6. Grew . . . faculty] Steevens noted a parallel in Horace, Odes, Bk. I, 12, ll. 45-6, “crescit occulte velut arbor aevo fama Marcelli”.

The simile was well-known and appeared in several sixteenth century collections. Baldwin, II. 500-3, suggests that Shakespeare’s adaptation was influenced by the gloss in Lamminus’ edition of Horace, 1567, I. 47.

66. Unseen . . . faculty] Unseen by us although we know it is its nature to grow.
66. crescive] growing.
66. his faculty] its inherent power.
Cant. It must be so; for miracles are ceas’d;
And therefore we must needs admit the means
How things are perfected.

Ely. But, my good lord,
How now for mitigation of this bill
Urg’d by the commons? Doth his majesty
Incline to it, or no?

Cant. He seems indifferent,
Or rather swaying more upon our part
Than cherishing th’ exhibitors against us;
For I have made an offer to his majesty,
Upon our spiritual convocation,
And in regard of causes now in hand,
Which I have open’d to his grace at large,
As touching France, to give a greater sum
Than ever at one time the clergy yet
Did to his predecessors part withal.

Ely. How did this offer seem receiv’d, my lord?

Cant. With good acceptance of his majesty;
Save that there was not time enough to hear,
As I perceiv’d his grace would fain have done,
The several and unhidden passages
Of his true titles to some certain dukedoms,
And generally to the crown and seat of France,
Deriv’d from Edward, his great-grandfather.

67-9. for miracles . . . perfected] Protestant doctrine asserted that miracles ceased to occur after the revelation (see Scot, Discoverie of Witches, vm. i. 25; Wm. Perkins, Works, I. 156, 574; III. 608). Any apparent miracles, even those “leading to the perfection of nature” were the work of demons. Canterbury’s point is that Henry’s conversion proves the validity of the doctrine that a man by purifying his mind can attain heavenly perfection without the aid of evil powers. (See Agrippa, Occult Philosophy 1. i.) Cf. All’s W. II. iii. 1-4.

72. indifferent] unbiased. Cf. the phrase used by Chichele to Henry in Hall, xxxvi, “Now with indiferente cares if you wyll note . . .”


75-81. For . . . withal] Sh. closely follows Holinshed, who follows Hall almost verbatim. The significant phrases and words are in both.

86. several[several] details. Cf. Troil. i. iii. 180, “several and generals”.

86. unhidden passages] clear and undisputed descent.
Ely. What was the impediment that broke this off?

Cant. The French ambassador upon that instant
   Crav’d audience; and the hour I think is come
   To give him hearing: is it four o’clock?

Ely. It is.

Cant. Then go we in to know his embassy;
   Which I could with a ready guess declare
   Before the Frenchman speak a word of it.

Ely. I’ll wait upon you, and I long to hear it. [Exeunt.

SCENE II.—The Same. The Presence Chamber.

Enter King Henry, Gloucester, Bedford, Clarence,
Warwick, Westmoreland, Exeter, and Attendants.

K. Hen. Where is my gracious lord of Canterbury?

Exe. Not here in presence.

K. Hen. Send for him, good uncle.

West. Shall we call in th’ ambassador, my liege?

K. Hen. Not yet, my cousin: we would be resolv’d,
   Before we hear him, of some things of weight
   That task our thoughts, concerning us and France.

Enter the Archbishop of Canterbury and
   the Bishop of Ely.

Cant. God and his angels guard your sacred throne,
   And make you long become it!

K. Hen. Sure, we thank you.
   My learned lord, we pray you to proceed,
   And justly and religiously unfold

Scene II

Enter . . . Attendants] Ed.; Enter the King, Humfrey, Bedford, Clarence,
Enter two Bishops F.

Scene II

S.D. Clarence in F has no speaking part, nor does he appear elsewhere in
the play.

4. my cousin] Westmoreland married Joan Beaufort, the daughter of
John of Gaunt, Henry’s uncle.
Why the law Salic that they have in France
Or should, or should not, bar us in our claim.
And God forbid, my dear and faithful lord,
That you should fashion, wrest, or bow your reading,
Or nicely charge your understanding soul
With opening titles miscreate, whose right
Suits not in native colours with the truth;
For God doth know how many now in health
Shall drop their blood in approbation
Of what your reverence shall incite us to.
Therefore take heed how you impawn our person,
How you awake our sleeping sword of war:
We charge you, in the name of God, take heed;
For never two such kingdoms did contend
Without much fall of blood; whose guiltless drops
Are every one a woe, a sore complaint
'Gainst him whose wrongs gives edge unto the swords
That makes such waste in brief mortality.
Under this conjuration speak, my lord,
And we will hear, note, and believe in heart
That what you speak is in your conscience wash'd
As pure as sin with baptism.

Cant. Then hear me, gracious sovereign, and you peers,
That owe yourselves, your lives, and services
To this imperial throne. There is no bar
To make against your highness' claim to France

27. gives] F; gine Malone.

14. That ... reading] A topical point. One of the main charges brought against the Puritans was their false interpretation of the Scriptures (see J. Bridges, A defence of the government ... 1587, p. 13).
15-16. nicely ... miscreate] by subtle reasoning lay guilt upon your soul—which knows the truth to be otherwise—by putting forward illegitimate claims.
15. understanding soul] Possibly a glance at the "rational" soul as distinct from the souls of "growth" and "sense". Cf. Tw.N. ii. iii. 63, "drew three souls out of one weaver", and Donne, To the Countess of Bedford, ii. 34-5, "But as our Soules of growth and Soules of sense Have birthright of our reason's Soule".
19. approbation] support.
27. wrongs] wrong-doings.
31-2. wash'd ... baptism] An interesting comment in view of Canterbury's words in i. i. 25-34.
32. sin] original sin.
33-95. This speech follows Holinshed very closely. See Appendix, p. 160.
But this, which they produce from Pharamond,
In terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant,
"No woman shall succeed in Salic land:"
Which Salic land the French unjustly gloze
To be the realm of France, and Pharamond
The founder of this law and female bar.
Yet their own authors faithfully affirm
That the land Salic is in Germany,
Between the floods of Sala and of Elbe;
Where Charles the Great having subdued the Saxons,
There left behind and settled certain French;
Who, holding in disdain the German women
For some dishonest manners of their life,
Establish'd then this law; to wit, no female
Should be inheritrix in Salic land:
Which Salic, as I said, 'twixt Elbe and Sala,
Is at this day in Germany call'd Meissen.
Then doth it well appear the Salic law
Was not devised for the realm of France;
Nor did the French possess the Salic land
Until four hundred one and twenty years
After defunct of King Pharamond,
Idly suppos'd the founder of this law;
Who died within the year of our redemption
Four hundred twenty-six; and Charles the Great
Subdued the Saxons, and did seat the French
Beyond the river Sala, in the year

38. succedant] F 2; succedaul F 1.
37. Pharamond] a legendary king of the Salian Franks.
38-9. The Salic Law was actually a collection of folk laws and customs and had nothing to do with the right of succession. The French nobles who elected Philip of Valois to the throne did so to prevent the kingdom falling into the hands of a woman. They further rejected Edward III's claim through his mother, Isabella. The name Salic Law seems to have become attached to this principle later on.

40. gloze] gloss, interpret.

45, 52. Elbe] Capell; Elue F.
45, 52. Elbe] So Holinshed. The Folio reading "Elue" appears in Hall.

49. dishonest] unchaste. Holinshed (1587) uses "dishonest" for "unchaste" (1578). One of the indications that Shakespeare was using the second edition.

57. four hundred one and twenty] So Holinshed. Actually it was 379 years later, i.e. four hundred less one and twenty.
Eight hundred five. Besides, their writers say, King Pepin, which deposed Childeric, Did, as heir general, being descended Of Blithild, which was daughter to King Clothair, Make claim and title to the crown of France. Hugh Capet also, who usurp’d the crown Of Charles the Duke of Lorraine, sole heir male Of the true line and stock of Charles the Great, To find his title with some shows of truth, Though, in pure truth, it was corrupt and naught, Convey’d himself as heir to the Lady Lingare, Daughter to Charlemain, who was the son To Lewis the emperor, and Lewis the son Of Charles the Great. Also King Lewis the Tenth, Who was sole heir to the usurper Capet, Could not keep quiet in his conscience, Wearing the crown of France, till satisfied That fair Queen Isabel, his grandmother, Was lineal of the Lady Ermengare, Daughter to Charles the foresaid Duke of Lorraine: By the which marriage the line of Charles the Great Was re-united to the crown of France. So that, as clear as is the summer’s sun, King Pepin’s title, and Hugh Capet’s claim, King Lewis his satisfaction, all appear

72. find] F; fine Q, Pope. the Lady] th' Lady F.

66. heir general] "one who inherits whether his descent be through the male or the female" (Moore Smith).

72. find] furnish, provide. The Q reading "fine" is preferred by some editors who render it as "furbish". This is rather strained, and it seems better to retain the F reading, although Shakespeare does not use "find" elsewhere in this sense.

74. Convey'd himself] dishonestly gave himself out to be. Cf. Wsh. r. iii. 90-1, "'Convey', the wise it call 'Steal'! foh! a fico for the phrase".

74. as heir] The F reading "as th' Heir" is probably due to an anticipation of the following "the".

74. Lingare] "Lingard" in Holinshed. Probably an "e": "d" misprint in the play.

75. Charlemain] Actually Charles the bald. The error is in Holinshed and Hall.

76, 77. Lewis] a monosyllable.

77. Lewis the Tenth] Historically the ninth as in Hall. The error is Holinshed's.

82. Ermengare] Ermengard in Holinshed. Cf. l. 74, "Lingare".

88. his satisfaction] see l. 80.
To hold in right and title of the female:
So do the kings of France unto this day;
Howbeit they would hold up this Salic law
To bar your highness claiming from the female;
And rather choose to hide them in a net
Than amply to imbar their crooked titles
Usurp'd from you and your progenitors.

K. Hen. May I with right and conscience make this claim?

Cant. The sin upon my head, dread sovereign!
For in the book of Numbers is it writ:
"When the man dies, let the inheritance
Descend unto the daughter." Gracious lord,
Stand for your own; unwind your bloody flag;
Look back into your mighty ancestors:
Go, my dread lord, to your great-grand sire's tomb,
From whom you claim; invoke his war-like spirit,
And your great-uncle's, Edward the Black Prince,
Who on the French ground play'd a tragedy,
Making defeat on the full power of France;
While his most mighty father on a hill
Stood smiling to behold his lion's whelp

94. imbar] F 3, Camb.; imbarre F 1; imbare Theobald following Warburton's conjecture; imbace Q 1.

93-4. And... titles] They therefore chose to take refuge in a transparent tangle of contradictions rather than to admit that the law places an absolute bar on their own claims.

94. imbar] Most modern editors read "embar", expose, as an antithesis to "hide", l. 93. This interpretation, however, misses the point of the Archbishop's skilful oratory. He takes up the word "bar" (l. 12) from Henry and adroitly plays on it (l. 35, 42, 92). Then, having demolished the arguments of the French, he shows that as they still uphold this "bar", they by their own showing completely bar the claims of their own kings. "imbar" is a variant of "embar" (Evans), "cm" an intensive prefix.

xxvii. 8: "When a man dyeth & hath no sonne, ye shall turne his inheritaunce vnto his daughter." Here taken from Holinshed.

102-19. Look... veins] Probably based on a passage in Hall, xxxvii: "diminishe not youre title, whiche your noble progenitors so highly haue estemed. Wherefore aueaunce forth your banner, ... conquere your inheritaunce."

103. great-grand sire's] Edward III's. Henry derived his claim to the French throne through Edward III whose mother, Isabella, was the daughter of Philip IV of France.

107. defeat] Cressy, 1346.

108. on a hill] Cf. Holinshed, III. 171, "he stood aloft on a windmill-hill".
Forage in blood of French nobility.
O noble English, that could entertain
With half their forces the full pride of France,
And let another half stand laughing by,
All out of work, and cold for action!

Ely. Awake remembrance of these valiant dead,
And with your puissant arm renew their feats:
You are their heir, you sit upon their throne;
The blood and courage that renowned them
Runs in your veins; and my thrice-puissant liege
Is in the very May-morn of his youth,
Ripe for exploits and mighty enterprises.

Exe. Your brother kings and monarchs of the earth
Do all expect that you should rouse yourself,
As did the former lions of your blood.

West. They know your grace hath cause and means and
might;
So hath your highness; never king of England
Had nobles richer, and more loyal subjects,
Whose hearts have left their bodies here in England
And lie pavilion'd in the fields of France.

Cant. O, let their bodies follow, my dear liege,
With blood and sword and fire to win your right;
In aid whereof we of the spirituauty
Will raise your highness such a mighty sum

110. Forage in] prey on.
112. half] The English army was
arranged in three divisions, one of
which remained with Edward in
reserve.
114. cold for action] i.e. for lack of
action.
119. thrice-puissant] i.e. a reckoning
of the three points of relationship in
the preceding two lines.
120. May-morn . . . youth] Henry
was 27. Shakespeare follows the
convention, derived from classical
sources, in which youth (juvenus) is
defined as the period from 17 or 23
to 46 or 42 years of age. Some
authorities divide this period into
youth and manhood. Even so Henry
was still a youth. Cf. Ferne, Blazon
of Genriec, 1586, p. 171, "Lusty green
youth from 20. till 30. yecres."
125-7. They . . . subjects] Cf. Hall,
xi2, "But sithe God hathe sent
you people, riches, municiês of warre
and all thynges necessary. . . ."
128-30. Whose . . . follow] Cf. Hall,
xii2. "[Westmoreland's] opinion
was muche noted and well digested
with the kynge, but in especiall with
his thre brethren and diuerse other
lords heuyng yonge and lusty, desir-
ous to win honor and profite in the
realme of Fraunce. . . So that now
all men cried warre, warre, Fraunce,
Fraunce."
As never did the clergy at one time
Bring in to any of your ancestors.

K. Hen. We must not only arm t' invade the French,
But lay down our proportions to defend
Against the Scot, who will make road upon us
With all advantages.

Cant. They of those marches, gracious sovereign,
Shall be a wall sufficient to defend
Our inland from the pilfering borderers.

K. Hen. We do not mean the coursing snatchers only,
But fear the main intention of the Scot,
Who hath been still a giddy neighbour to us;
For you shall read that my great-grandfather
Never went with his forces into France
But that the Scot on his unfurnish'd kingdom
Came pouring, like the tide into a breach,
With ample and brim fullness of his force,
Galling the gleaned land with hot assays,
Girding with grievous siege castles and towns;
That England, being empty of defence,

137. lay . . . proportions] estimate the number of troops required.
137-9. Note that Henry is the first to raise the threat of Scottish invasion, in Hall and Holinshed it is Westmoreland.
139. With all advantages] with everything in his favour.
140-2. They . . . borderers] Cf. Hall, xi, "and leue my Lorde of Westmerlande and other graue capitanes of the Northe with a convenient nombre to defende the Marches if the subtil Scottes . . . will any thyng attempt durynge your voyage and absence".
140. marches] borders.
143. coursing snatchers] swift-riding raiders, thieving hounds. The metaphor is derived from the sport of coursing in which hares were pursued by greyhounds. The "snatch" was the term used to describe the act of seizing the quarry.
144. main intendment] general hostile purpose.
145. still] ever.
146-65. For . . . treasuries] Cf. Hall, xxxix: "Let men reade the Chronicles and peruse oure Englishe Chronographeries, & you shall finde that the Scottes haue seldom of their owne mocion inuaded or vexed Englande . . . And wher they haue inuaded, as I can not deny but they have dooen, what glory or what profite succeeded of their enterprise. . . . Dauid le Bruse also entered Englande, your greate grandfathers kynge Edward the third lyeing at the siege of Caleis. Was not . . . kynge Dauid taken beside Durrham."
148. unfurnish'd] unprovided with defences.
151. gleaned] stripped of its defenders.
Hath shook and trembled at th' ill neighbourhood.

_Cant._ She hath been then more fear'd than harm'd, my liege;

For hear her but exampl'd by herself:
When all her chivalry hath been in France
And she a mourning widow of her nobles,
She hath herself not only well defended,
But taken and impounded as a stray
The King of Scots; whom she did send to France,
To fill King Edward's fame with prisoner kings,
And make her chronicle as rich with praise
As is the ooze and bottom of the sea
With sunken wrack and sunless treasures.

_Ely._ But there's a saying very old and true;
If that you will France win,
Then with Scotland first begin:
For once the eagle England being in prey,
To her unguarded nest the weasel Scot
Comes sneaking and so sucks her princely eggs,
Playing the mouse in absence of the cat,

_163._ _her_] Capell following Johnson's conjecture; _their_ F; _your_ Q, Steevens.

_154._ _neighbourhood_] neighbourliness.
_155._ _fear'd_] frightened.
_160._ _impounded as a stray_] put in the parish pound (cattle pen) like a stray beast.
_161._ _The King . . . France_] David II was captured at Neville's Cross, 17 October 1346, during Edward III's absence in France. He was not actually taken to France, although in the play of _Edward III_ (pr. 1596) v. i. 63 ff., John Copland, his captor, is represented as bringing him to Edward at Calais.
_163._ _her_] The Q reading "your" was adopted by Steevens and has been approved by Price (p. 45) and Greg (Principles, p. 174). The F "their", spelt "ther" (Wilson), is a possible misreading of either "her" or "your", spelt "yor".

The adoption of "her", however, seems more consistent with the trend of the speech.
_164._ _ooze and bottom_] oozy bottom (hendiadys).
_164-5._ _As . . . treasures_] Cf. _R_ 3 1. iv. 27-8,
"Inestimable stones, unvalu'd jewels
All scatter'd in the bottom of the sea"

_166._ _Ely_] The corresponding speech in Holinshed and Hall is assigned to Westmoreland. As Shakespeare has already diverged from Holinshed (see note to ll. 137-9), and as both lords and prelates are equally enthusiastic in favour of a French war, it seems unnecessary to change the F reading.
_169._ _in prey_] in pursuit of her prey.
To tame and havoc more than she can eat.

Exe. It follows then the cat must stay at home:
Yet that is but a crush'd necessity,
Since we have locks to safeguard necessaries
And pretty traps to catch the petty thieves.
While that the armed hand doth fight abroad
Th' advised head defends itself at home:
For government, though high and low and lower,
Put into parts, doth keep in one consent,
Congreeing in a full and natural close,
Like music.

Cant. Therefore doth heaven divide
The state of man in divers functions,
Setting endeavour in continual motion;
To which is fixed, as an aim or butt,

173. tame] F, Dover Wilson after Greg; tear Rowe (ed. 3); taint Theobald.

173. tame] pierce, cut into, broach. The F reading was established by Greg (Principles, p. 171), who pointed out that it was an aphetic form of "attame".

174 ff. In Hall and Holinshed Exeter argues that since France conspires with Scotland against England and sends her money for that purpose, to cut off the main trunk (France) would automatically ensure the destruction of the branch (Scotland). In the play, however, Exeter merely extends Canterbury's view (II. 155-65), and then makes an easy transition to the latter's description of the bees which is clearly the climax of the discussion. See Introduction, p. xxv.

175. crush'd necessity] the need (for staying at home) is greatly diminished. Cf. Gyn. i. i. 26-7, "Crush him together rather than unfold His measure duly."

177. pretty] good, ingenious.

179. advised] prudent, wise.

180-9. For . . . music] Grether, Das Verhältnis von Shakespeares Heinrich V zu Sir T. Elyot's "Governour"., 1938, draws attention to a passage in the Governor (ed. Croft, 1880) I. 42: "[the tutor] shall commend the perfecte understandinge of musike, deifying how necessary it is for the better attaynye the knowledge of a publike weale: which as I before have saide, is made of an ordre of astathe and degrees, and . . . contineinth in it a perfect harmony." Theobald, however, noted an even older parallel in Cicero's De Republica II. De Republica was not available in the sixteenth century, but the passage Theobald referred to was quoted by St. Augustine in De Civitate Dei, and thus would have been available to Shakespeare. Here is the passage in De Civitate Dei II. 21 (ed. Dombart), p. 80: " . . . isque consequentus ex dissimillimorum vocum moderatione concors tamen efficitur et congruens: sic ex summis et infinitis et mediis interiectis ordinibus, ut sonis moderata ratione civitatem consensu dissimillimorum concinere, et quae harmonia a musicis dicitur in cantu, cam esse in civitate concordiam. . . ."
Obedience: for so work the honey-bees,  
Creatures that by a rule in nature teach  
The act of order to a peopled kingdom.  
They have a king and officers of sorts;  
Where some, like magistrates, correct at home,  
Others, like merchants, venture trade abroad,  
Others, like soldiers, armed in their stings,  
Make boot upon the summer’s velvet buds;  
Which pillage they with merry march bring home  
To the tent-royal of their emperor:  
Who, busied in his majesty, surveys  
The singing masons building roofs of gold,  
The civil citizens kneading up the honey,  
The poor mechanic porters crowding in  
Their heavy burdens at his narrow gate,  
The sad-ey’d justice, with his surly hum,  

189. act] F; art Pope.  197. majesty] Q, Rowe; Maiesties F.  
199. kneading] F; lading Q.  

187-204. for so . . . drone] It is likely that Shakespeare is more indebted to the description of the bees in the fourth book of Virgil’s Georgics, II. 152 ff. than to Pliny, Nat. Hist. XI. or to any of the innumerable borrowers from them such as St. Ambrose, Chelidonius, Elyot or Lyly. Baldwin, II. 472-8, claims that Shakespeare was indebted to Willichius’ commentary at the beginning of the Georgics, Bk. IV, Opera, Venice, 1544, pp. 141-3 since “Shakespeare has used the same classifications and in the same order as Willichius”. He adds that a compendious edition containing the notes of other commentators as well was probably used by Shakespeare since there are some details not accounted for by Willichius’ Virgil. There are later editions of Virgil which include Willichius’ commentary with those of other writers.  
188. rule in nature] instinctive polity (Dover Wilson).  
189. act of order] orderly action.  

190. king] A common belief derived from Aristotle.  
190. of sorts] of various ranks. Cf. Chelidonius, p. 18, “they have their king, and seeme to kepe a certaine forme of a kingdome”.  
191. correct] administer justice.  
194. boot] booty, prey.  
195-6. which . . . emperor] Cf. Troil. r. iii. 81-9, “When that the general is not like the hive  
To whom the foragers shall all repair,  
What honey is expected?”  
197. busied . . . surveys] Dover Wilson quotes Pliny, Nat. Hist. XI. 17, “when all his people are busie in labor, himselfe . . . overseeth their workes”.  
199. kneading] a normal term for moulding wax according to Cooper’s Thesaurus and Baret’s Alciatia. Probably a recollection of Virgil’s earlier passage, Georgics IV. 56 “et mella tenacia fingunt”.
Delivering o'er to executors pale
The lazy yawning drone. I this infer,
That many things, having full reference
To one consent, may work contrariously;
As many arrows, loosed several ways,
Come to one mark; as many ways meet in one town;
As many fresh streams meet in one salt sea;
As many lines close in the dial's centre;
So may a thousand actions, once afoot,
End in one purpose, and be all well borne
Without defeat. Therefore to France, my liege.
Divide your happy England into four;
Whereof take you one quarter into France,
And you withal shall make all Gallia shake.
If we, with thrice such powers left at home,
Cannot defend our own doors from the dog,
Let us be worried and our nation lose
The name of hardiness and policy.

K. Hen. Call in the messengers sent from the Dauphin.

[Exeunt some Attendants.

Now are we well resolv'd; and by God's help,
And yours, the noble sinews of our power,
France being ours, we'll bend it to our awe
Or break it all to pieces: or there we'll sit,
Ruling in large and ample emp'ry
O'er France and all her almost kingly dukedoms,
Or lay these bones in an unworthy urn,
Tombless, with no remembrance over them:
Either our history shall with full mouth

212. End] Q, Pope; And F. Exeunt . . . ] added Capell.
222. well] F 1; all F 3.

203. executors] executioners.
205-6. having . . . consent] being fully related by a common aim.
207. loosed several ways] shot from different directions.
210. dial's] sundial's.
212. End] The F "And" was probably an anticipation of "and" later in the line.
212. borne] sustained.
220. policy] statesmanship.
224. ours] i.e. by the right of inheritance.
224. bend . . . awe] bring it in awe of us, subdue it to our authority.
226. emp'ry] sovereignty.
228. urn] grave.
229. Tombless] without a monument.
Speak freely of our acts, or else our grave,
Like Turkish mute, shall have a tongueless mouth,
Not worshipp'd with a waxen epitaph.

Enter Ambassadors of France.

Now are we well prepar'd to know the pleasure
Of our fair cousin Dauphin; for we hear
Your greeting is from him, not from the king.

Amb. May't please your majesty to give us leave
Freely to render what we have in charge;
Or shall we sparingly show you far off
The Dauphin's meaning and our embassy?

K. Hen. We are no tyrant, but a Christian king;
Unto whose grace our passion is as subject
As is our wretches fetter'd in our prisons:
Therefore with frank and with uncurbed plainness
Tell us the Dauphin's mind.

Amb. Thus then, in few.

Your highness, lately sending into France,
Did claim some certain dukedoms, in the right
Of your great predecessor, King Edward the Third.
In answer of which claim, the prince our master
Says that you savour too much of your youth,

245. then] F 2; than F 1.

232. Turkish mute ... mouth] To ensure secrecy certain kinds of slaves in the Turkish royal household had their tongues cut out.

233. Not ... epitaph] without the honour even of a waxen epitaph, much less one of stone or brass (Evans). Shakespeare may be using "waxen" in the sense of "frail" or "perishable". Cf. R3 i. iii. 75.

239. sparingly show you far off] discreetly indicate in general terms. Cf. R3 iii. v. 93, "But touch this sparingly, as't were far off". The Archbishop of Burges, the ambassador in the Famous Victories, shows a similar hesitancy (Sig. D37).
And bids you be advis’d: there’s nought in France
That can be with a nimble galliard won;
You cannot revel into dukes and duchesses.
He therefore sends you, meeter for your spirit,
This tun of treasure; and, in lieu of this,
Desires you let the dukedoms that you claim
Hear no more of you. This the Dauphin speaks.

K. Hen. What treasure, uncle?

Exe. Tennis-balls, my liege.

K. Hen. We are glad the Dauphin is so pleasant with us;
His present and your pains we thank you for:
When we have match’d our rackets to these balls,
We will in France, by God’s grace, play a set
Shall strike his father’s crown into the hazard.

251. be advis’d consider, take care.
Those editors who omit the F colon
after “ advis’d ” interpret “ in-
formed”. Cf. 2 Chorus 12.

252. galliard] a lively dance (Fr.
gaiilarde, merry). See Davies,
Orchestra, 1596, stanzas 67, 68.

255. tun of treasure] The word “ tun ” is used in Hall, xii, the
Famous Victories, and in various
accounts of the legend early in the
fifteenth century, e.g. the Brut,
p. 374, and Lydgate’s Poem on Henry
V’s Expedition (Nicolas, Chronicle of
London from 1089 to 1483, 1827, p.
216).

259. so . . . us] so given to pleas-
antries at our expense. Cf. Famous
Victories, Sig. D3v, “ My lord prince
Dolphin is very pleasant with me ”.

261-6. When . . . chasers] Tennis, from which modern lawn tennis is
derived, was a popular game among
the Elizabethan nobles. The oblong
court was paved and enclosed by
walls, the two shorter walls being pierced by holes or galleries, called
“ hazards ”. Netted string rackets
were used to drive a leather ball
stuffed with hair over a low net or
rope halfway along the two longer
walls. Points were scored when a
ball was driven into a “ hazard ” or
when it bounced twice (“ chases ”).
A modified form of the game is still
played.

262. in France] (a) the country, (b)
a tennis court. Cf. Dekker, Gull’s
Horn-book, ed. 1905, p. 51, “ how often
you have sweat in the tennis-court
with that great Lord; for indeed the
sweating together in France (I mean
the society of tennis) . . . ”, and
Famous Victories, Sig. D3v,
“ Yea such balles as never were tost
in France,
The proudest Tennis Court shall rue
it ”.

263. strike . . . hazard] (a) score a
winning point (see note ii. 261-6),
(b) place his father’s crown in
jeopardy.

265. crown] (a) coin (stake money),
(b) French throne. The method of
scoring in royal tennis is apparently
derived from the practice of betting
on the game in the reign of Louis X,
1289-1316. The normal stake was a
“ couronne ” (crown) or “ paume ”
worth 60 sous (cf. Florio, Second
Frutes, 1591, pp. 25-7). Each scoring
point was calculated as a denier d’or
(15 sous) until the first player to
reach 60 sous won the final point,
which was called “ couronne ”. Cf.
Tell him he hath made a match with such a wrangler
That all the courts of France will be disturb’d
With chases. And we understand him well,
How he comes o’er us with our wilder days,
Not measuring what use we made of them.
We never valu’d this poor seat of England;
And therefore, living hence, did give ourself
To barbarous licence; as ’tis ever common
That men are merriest when they are from home.
But tell the Dauphin I will keep my state,
Be like a king and show my sail of greatness
When I do rouse me in my throne of France:
For that I have laid by my majesty
And plodded like a man for working-days,
But I will rise there with so full a glory
That I will dazzle all the eyes of France,
Yea, strike the Dauphin blind to look on us.
And tell the pleasant prince this mock of his
Hath turn’d his balls to gun-stones; and his soul
Shall stand sore charged for the wasteful vengeance
That shall fly with them: for many a thousand widows

Hall, xliii, "I truste to make the hyghest croune of your countreye stoope".

264. wrangler] (a) opponent, (b) disputant in an academic exercise.
265. courts] (a) royal, (b) tennis, (c) law.
266. chases] (a) points in tennis, (b) disputes over claims to the crown, (c) hunting of the Chevy Chase variety.
267. comes o’er us with] throws in our face.
269-72. We ... home] Ironical.
269. seat] throne.
274. my sail of greatness] the swelling powers of my greatness. Cf. Sonnet 86, "Was it the proud full sail of his great verse”.
275. rouse me] raise myself up, ascend. Cf. 2H4 iv. i. 118, "Being mounted and both roused in their seats”.

276-80. For that ... us] Cf. 1H4 i. ii. 217-39, particularly the sun-image of royalty in both.
277. like ... working-days] like a common man on working days.
282. gun-stones] Not in Hall or Holinshed but mentioned by Lydgate (Nicolas, Chronicle of London, 1827, p. 220) and in the Brut, p. 375, "and anon lette make tenyballis for the Dolfyn in alle the haste that thy mygte be maade, & that thei were harde & grete gune-stonys, for the Dolfyn to play with-alle”. At Harfleur, p. 376, "he played at tenys with his hard gune-stone". Nicolas, History of the Battle of Agincourt, 1827, p. 120, states, “an order occurs during this reign, for the forming a certain number [of gun stones] from the quarries of Maidstone".
Shall this his mock mock out of their dear husbands;
Mock mothers from their sons, mock castles down; 286
And some are yet ungotten and unborn
That shall have cause to curse the Dauphin's scorn.
But this lies all within the will of God,
To whom I do appeal; and in whose name 290
Tell you the Dauphin I am coming on,
To venge me as I may and to put forth
My rightful hand in a well-hallow'd cause.
So get you hence in peace; and tell the Dauphin
His jest will savour but of shallow wit 295
When thousands weep more than did laugh at it.
Convey them with safe conduct. Fare you well.

[Exeunt Ambassadors.

Exe. This was a merry message.

K. Hen. We hope to make the sender blush at it.
Therefore, my lords, omit no happy hour 300
That may give furth'rance to our expedition;
For we have now no thought in us but France,
Save those to God, that run before our business.
Therefore let our proportions for these wars
Be soon collected, and all things thought upon 305
That may with reasonable swiftness add
More feathers to our wings; for, God before,
We'll chide this Dauphin at his father's door.
Therefore let every man now task his thought,
That this fair action may on foot be brought. 310

[Exeunt. Flourish.

310. Flourish] before "Enter Chorus" F.

290-3, 303. Note Henry's insistence on the righteousness of his cause,
and his frequent prayers.
292. as I may] See note to ii. i. 15-16.
300. omit . . . hour] lose no favourable occasion.
304. proportions] forces. See l. 137.
306. Henry's speed is noted elsewhere. Cf. ii. iv. 68 and Famous
Victorias, Sig. D\textsuperscript{3}V, Sig. E\textsuperscript{1}V.

306-7. with . . . wings] Cf. 2
Chorus 7; iv. iii. 112, and Troil.
ii. ii. 43-5,
"if he do set
The very wings of reason to his heels,
And fly like chidden Mercury from
Jove."
307. God before] with God guiding
us.
ACT II

Enter Chorus

Now all the youth of England are on fire, And silken dalliance in the wardrobe lies: Now thrive the armourers, and honour’s thought Reigns solely in the breast of every man. They sell the pasture now to buy the horse, Following the mirror of all Christian kings, With winged heels, as English Mercuries. For now sits Expectation in the air, And hides a sword from hilts unto the point With crowns imperial, crowns and coronets, Promised to Harry and his followers. The French, advis’d by good intelligence

ACT II

Act II] transferred by Johnson from before the 3 Chorus.

Chorus

2. silken dalliance . . . lies] idle pastimes and luxurious garments are alike laid aside. Cf. iiH.4 v. i. 12-13, “And made us doff our easy robes of peace, To crush our old limbs in ungentle steel”, and Cor. i. iv. 94.


6. mirror] pattern of perfection. The word was in common use in Shakespeare’s time.

7. winged . . . Mercuries] In classical legend Mercury, or Hermes, was the messenger and herald of the gods. He is usually represented as wearing a winged cap and winged sandals, and as bearing a winged serpent-entwined rod. Cf. iH.4 iv. i. 104-10. 9-10. And hides . . . coronets] Possibly Shakespeare was thinking of the woodcut of Edward III holding a sword ringed by two crowns in the first edition of Holinshed, 1577, p. 885. On the other hand, the device of Edward III, a sword ringed by three crowns, may have been known to Shakespeare as he specifically mentions three types of crowns. Scott-Giles, Shakespeare’s Heraldry, 1950, pp. 108-9, explains that this device was “either in allusion to the three great victories of his reign—Cressy, Neville’s Cross, and Poictiers—or to the kingdoms of England, France, and of the Romans, the latter crown having been offered to him by the Electors”.

9. hilts] Not the handle but the arms of the crosspiece guarding the hand.

12. intelligence] secret reports, espionage.
Of this most dreadful preparation,  
Shake in their fear, and with pale policy  
Seek to divert the English purposes.  

O England! model to thy inward greatness,  
Like little body with a mighty heart,  
What might'st thou do, that honour would thee do,  
Were all thy children kind and natural!  
But see, thy fault France hath in thee found out,  
A nest of hollow bosoms, which he fills  
With treacherous crowns; and three corrupted men,  
One, Richard Earl of Cambridge, and the second,  
Henry Lord Scroop of Masham, and the third,  
Sir Thomas Grey, knight, of Northumberland,  
Have, for the gilt of France,—O guilt indeed!—  
Confirm'd their conspiracy with fearful France;  
And by their hands this grace of kings must die,  
If hell and treason hold their promises,  
Ere he take ship for France, and in Southampton.  
Linger your patience on; and we’ll digest  
Th' abuse of distance; force a play.  
The sum is paid; the traitors are agreed;  
The king is set from London; and the scene

16. model] small replica. Cf. R2 iii. ii. 153-4, "that small model of  
the barren earth which serves as paste and cover to our bones".  
16-19. Cf. the Bastard's famous speech, John v. vii. 110-18, and the interesting note in Dover Wilson's  
New Cambridge edition of that play.  
19. kind and natural] filial and obedient to the law of nature.  
21. hollow] (a) empty, (b) false.  
21. bosoms] (a) dresses "considered receptacles for money or valuables"  
(O.E.D. "bosom" 9b), (b) seats of thoughts or feelings.  
26. gilt] i.e. crowns.  
26. guilt] As Dover Wilson notes "an irresistible pun to Shakespeare".  
Cf. 2H4 iv. v. 127; Mac. ii. ii. 57-8, etc.  
28. grace of kings] Steevens compares Chapman's Seaven Bookes of the  
Iliades of Homere, 1598, Bk. I, p. 11,  
"with her, the grace of kings  
Wise Ithacus ascended too".  
31-2. digest . . . distance] set in order our changes of place, i.e. our  
breach of the unity of place. Cf.  
Troil., Prologue 28-9,  
"starting thence away  
To what may be digested in a play ",  
and Ham. ii. ii. 460. There is a possible  
quibble on the normal meaning of  
"digest".  
32. force] compel. Dover Wilson  
interprets as "farce", i.e. cram or stuff, and adds "a culinary word,  
following close upon 'digest'".
Is now transported, gentles, to Southampton:
There is the playhouse now, there must you sit;
And thence to France shall we convey you safe,
And bring you back, charming the narrow seas
To give you gentle pass; for if we may,
We'll not offend one stomach with our play.
But, till the king come forth and not till then,
Unto Southampton do we shift our scene. [Exit.

SCENE I.—London. A Street.

Enter CORPORAL NYM and LIEUTENANT BARDOLPH.

Bard. Well met, Corporal Nym.
Nym. Good morrow, Lieutenant Bardolph.
Bard. What, are Ancient Pistol and you friends yet?
Nym. For my part, I care not: I say little; but when
time shall serve there shall be smiles; but that
shall be as it may. I dare not fight; but I will
wink and hold out mine iron. It is a simple one;
but what though? it will toast cheese, and it will
endure cold as another man's sword will: and
there's an end.

40. offend one stomach] (a) displease
anyone, (b) cause anyone to be sea-
sick.
41-2. These lines hardly agree with

Scene 1

For this scene and scene iii see
Introduction, p. xl.
2. Lieutenant] In iii. ii. 3 Nym calls
Bardolph corporal, a return to the
rank he held in 2H4 iii. iv. 164.
3. Ancient] a corruption of “en-
sign”, standard-bearer.

4. I say little] I keep my own
counsel. Cf. iii. ii. 37-41.
4-5. but . . . smiles] but when it
suits my purpose I shall be friendly
enough.
6-9. Nym may have had a comical
stage sword.
8. toast cheese] Cf. John iv. iii. 99,
"I'll so maul you and your toasting-
iron".
9. endure cold] Nym's sword is
usually hot for its main use is the
toasting of cheese, yet it will survive
being drawn for its legitimate purpose.
Poor quality iron has been known to
snap in intense cold.
Bard. I will bestow a breakfast to make you friends, and we'll be all three sworn brothers to France: let it be so, good Corporal Nym.

Nym. Faith, I will live so long as I may, that's the certain of it; and when I cannot live any longer, I will do as I may: that is my rest, that is the rendezvous of it.

Bard. It is certain, corporal, that he is married to Nell Quickly; and certainly she did you wrong, for you were troth-plight to her.

Nym. I cannot tell; things must be as they may: men may sleep, and they may have their throats about them at that time; and some say knives have edges. It must be as it may: though patience be a tired mare, yet she will plod. There must be conclusions. Well, I cannot tell.

Enter Pistol and Hostess.

Bard. Here comes Ancient Pistol and his wife. Good corporal, be patient here. How now, mine host Pistol!

Pist. Base tike, call'st thou me host?

Scene 1

13. let it] Rowe; Let's F. 25. mare] Q, Theobald; name F.

12. sworn brothers] a brotherhood of thieves. Cf. 3. ii. 47, "sworn brothers in filching".

15-16. when . . . may] A proverbial expression, "He that cannot do as he would must do as he may". Cf. Tit. ii. i. 106-7. (Tilley, Elizabethan Proverb Lore, p. 720.)

16. rest] last resolve. A phrase borrowed from the game of primero, "to set up one's rest", to stake one's all. Cf. 2. iv. i. 125.

17. rendezvous] retreat or refuge, last resort. Cf. v. i. 87, and 1H4 iv. i. 57.

20. troth-plight] betrothed. A more binding contract than the modern engagement.

24-5. though . . . plod] to be patient is wearisome, yet it will achieve its object in the end.

25. mare] Theobald's adoption of the Q reading implies a simple misreading on the part of the F compositor. Cf. the proverb "Patience is a good hag, but she'll bolt" Apperson, p. 485. The tiredness of horses was proverbial. Cf. Tilley, Dictionary of Proverbs, H. 640, 642, 662.

28. How . . . Pistol] The Q assigns the corresponding speech to Nym, and many editors follow on the grounds that Nym is the aggressor whereas Bardolph is the peacemaker. It is difficult, however, to see anything offensive in this speech, and Bardolph may well be the speaker in his anxiety to keep the peace.
Now, by this hand I swear, I scorn the term; 30
Nor shall my Nell keep lodgers.

Host. No, by my troth, not long; for we cannot lodge
and board a dozen or fourteen gentlewomen that
live honestly by the prick of their needles, but it
will be thought we keep a bawdy-house straight.
O well-a-day, Lady, if he be not here now!

[Nym and Pistol draw.]

we shall see wilful adultery and murder committed.

Bard. Good lieutenant! good corporal! offer nothing
here.

Nym. Pish!
Pist. Pish for thee, Iceland dog! thou prick-ear'd cur of
Iceland!

Host. Good Corporal Nym, show thy valour and put up
your sword.

Nym. Will you shog off? I would have you solus.

36. Nym . . . draw] added Camb. after l. 35.

36. well-a-day] "welliday" F which
perhaps preserves a Shakespearian
spelling.

36. here] Most editions follow
Hammer's emendation "drawn" which
is difficult to justify as a mis-
reading since "h" and "d" are
totally unlike in the secretary hand.
Dover Wilson retains F reading citing
O.E.D. "hewn" 6b4 in support.
This will not do for in all the O.E.D.
examples "hewn" is completed by
the addition of "down" or equiva-
 lent phrase.

It is possible that the Q version of
this line, "O Lord heere Corporall
Nims . . . " preserves in general what
happened on the stage; namely,
that the Hostess, aware of the
existing hostility between Nym and
Pistol, and of her share in it, is
startled at seeing Nym and fears a
renewal of the quarrel. It is not so
much the drawing of the sword that
alarms her, but the fact that Nym is
there at all. One may perhaps
guess that she enters triumphantly
on Pistol's arm, in the full glory of a
newly wedded wife, and, addressing
her remarks to the audience, fails at
first to see Nym.

The emendation "here" (spelt
"heere") is put forward in the light
of the above interpretation, and on
the ground that "hewne" is a
possible misreading of "heere" in
Shakespeare's hand. For "c": minim errors cf. II. iii. 26 ; III. vii.
12 ; 4 Chorus 20; V. ii. 45, 77.

38. lieutenant] Cf. l. 27.

41. prick-ear'd cur of Iceland] pointed-
eared, long-haired lap-dog. Iceland
dogs were very hairy and inclined to
be snappish, in both presumably an
apt description of Nym.

42-3. show . . . sword] The Hostess
speaks more profoundly than she
intended. Valour among the "ir-
regular humorists" was not shown
by sheathing the sword.

44. shog off] come along.
Pist. "Solus", egregious dog? O viper vile! The "solus" in thy most mervailous face; The "solus" in thy teeth, and in thy throat, And in thy hateful lungs, yea, in thy maw, perdy; And, which is worse, within thy nasty mouth! I do retort the "solus" in thy bowels; For I can take, and Pistol's cock is up, And flashing fire will follow.

Nym. I am not Barbason; you cannot conjure me. I have an humour to knock you indifferently well. If you grow foul with me, Pistol, I will scour you with my rapier, as I may, in fair terms: if you would walk off, I would prick your guts a little, in good terms, as I may; and that's the humour of it.

46-50. The solus . . . bowels] Pistols outburst is a parody of that part of the service of exorcism known as the "conjuratio". The forms of exorcism varied considerably. Cf. "Signo oculos tuos, signo aures tuas . . . signo nares tuas . . . signo cor tuum" (Malleus Maleficarum, 1600, II. 297).

45. solus] (a) alone, (b) single, unmarried (Hotson, "Ancient Pistol", Yale Review, 1948, 38, pp. 51-66).

46. mervailous] Probably retains a Shakespearian spelling.

48. maw] stomach.

48. perdy] by God.


51. take] (a) cause harm or evil to befall you, curse you. Cf. Ham. i. i. 163, "No fairy takes", (b) strike.

51. cock is up] is cocked for firing, i.e. Pistol's blood is up.

53. Barbason] This word occurs in Wiv. ii. ii. 311, where it is stated to be a devil's "addition" (i.e. title). It is not given in Scot's Discoverie of Witchcraft, nor in the works of Wierus and Collin de Plancy's Dictionnaire Infernal. Dover Wilson's suggestion that it is Marbas or Barbas, the fiend that appears in the form of a raging lion (see Wierus, Pseudo monarchia, 1583, p. 914) is probably correct. Shakespeare, however, may have confused the demon's name with that of the celebrated French knight Barbason who encountered Henry in single combat in the mines at the siege of Melun (Holinshed, III. 577).

55-6. If . . . rapier] If you discharge your ill-humour upon me, I will cleanse you by running my rapier through you. The barrel of a pistol was said to be foul after it had been discharged, and it was normally cleaned by a scouring-rod.

56-9. in fair terms . . . in good terms . . . that's the humour of it] Fashionable phrases as Moore Smith and Dover Wilson note. Cf. 2 Return from Parnassus, ll. 1372-3, "It shall be thy task (Phantasma) to cut this gulles throate with faire tearmes" (i.e. in speech not in fact).

58-9. that's . . . of it] that's the mood I'm in, or that's the way things are.
Pist. O braggard vile and damned furious wight!
The grave doth gape, and doting death is near;
Therefore exhale.

Bard. Hear me, hear me what I say: he that strikes
the first stroke, I'll run him up to the hilt's, as I
am a soldier.

Pist. An oath of mickle might; and fury shall abate.
Give me thy fist, thy fore-foot to me give;
Thy spirits are most tall.

Nym. I will cut thy throat, one time or other, in fair
terms; that is the humour of it.

Pist. "Couple a gorge!"
That is the word. I thee defy again.
O hound of Crete, think'st thou my spouse to get?
No; to the spital go;
And from the powdering-tub of infamy
Fetch forth the lazar kite of Cressid's kind,
Doll Tearsheet she by name, and her espouse:
I have, and I will hold, the quondam Quickly

61. gape] opens its mouth hungrily.
Cf. l. 93 and 2H4 v. v. 58.
61. doting death] The idea of death
loving its victims was not uncommon.
Cf. Rom. v. iii. 103-5.
62. exhale] draw forth.
66. tall] courageous.
71. Couple a gorge] Typical Pistolian
French.
73. hound of Crete] Dover Wilson
quotes Golding's trans. of Ovid's
Metamorphoses, 1565, iii. 267, "And
shaggie Rugge with other twaine that
had a syre of Crete".
74. spital] hospital.
75. powdering-tub] a current term
for a heated tub to treat venereal
diseases by sweating. Normally the
powdering tub was used for salting
beef.
76. lazar kite of Cressid's kind]
leperous whore. The phrase "kite
of Cressid's kind" occurs frequently
(Stevens refers to Greene, Carde of
France, 1587, IV. 132, and to Gas-
cogne, Dan Bartholomew of Bath,
1577, l. 69).
76. kite] probably a quibble (a)
Kate or Kit, (b) kite, a bird of prey,
(c) cat. The story of Troilus and Cress-
ida, which has no classical authority,
came into English with Chaucer's
adaptation of it based on Boccaccio's
Filistostrato. Henryson continued Chau-
cer's story in his Testament of Cressid,
describing how Cressida was punished
by Saturn and Cynthia who caused
her to be afflicted with leprosy, and,
cast off by Diomede, she "like a leper
dwelt at the Spittail hous". Henry-
son's work was published in Stowe's
edition of Chaucer, 1561.
77. Doll Tearsheet] See 2H4 ii. iii.
165-85 and later v. iv. where she was
taken to prison. Cf. also Pistol's later
remark v. i. 85.
78-9. I have and I will hold ... for
the only she] Pistol, newly wed, has of
course agreed "to have and to hold
... forsaking all other ...".
For the only she; and—pauca, there's enough.
Go to.

Enter the Boy.

Boy. Mine host Pistol, you must come to my master,
and your hostess: he is very sick, and would to
bed. Good Bardolph, put thy face between his
sheets and do the office of a warming-pan. Faith,
he's very ill.

Bard. Away, you rogue!
Host. By my troth, he'll yield the crow a pudding one
of these days. The king has killed his heart.
Good husband, come home presently.

[Exeunt Hostess and Boy.

Bard. Come, shall I make you two friends? We must
to France together. Why the devil should we
keep knives to cut one another's throats?
Pist. Let floods o'erswell, and fiends for food howl on!
Nym. You'll pay me the eight shillings I won of you
at betting?
Pist. Base is the slave that pays.
Nym. That now I will have; that's the humour of it,
Pist. As manhood shall compound: push home.

[They draw.

Bard. By this sword, he that makes the first thrust,
I'll kill him; by this sword, I will.

79-80: enough. Go to] Pope; enough to go to F. 82. your] F; you
Hammer. 89. Exeunt... Boy] Capell; Exit F. 98. They
draw] Q; Draw F.

79. only she] the one woman in the
world.
81. my master] i.e. Falstaff. The
Boy is Falstaff's page given him by
Prince Hal, 2H4 i. ii.
83. thy face] Cf. 1H4 iii. iii. 27-59.
87. he'll... pudding] he (the Boy)
will become food for crows on the
gallows. A proverbial expression.
87. pudding] stuffed guts.
88. killed his heart] disheartened him
completely. Cf. Wint. iv. ii. 89.
Falstaff, it will be remembered, had
been rejected by Henry after the
coronation. See 2H4 v. v. 51-
77.
96. Base... pays] Steevens quotes
Heywood, Fair Maid of the West,
Works, 1874, II. 416, "My motto
shall be, Base is the man that pays ".
Editors have suspected that this is a
proverbial saying, but Heywood may
be echoing Pistol. It may be a
Pistolic version of "The poor man
always pays". Cf. Clarke, Paeomio-
logia, 1639, p. 99.
98. As... compound] That is as
courage shall decide.
Pist. Sword is an oath, and oaths must have their course.
Bard. Corporal Nym, an thou wilt be friends, be friends: an thou wilt not, why then, be enemies with me too. Prathee, put up.
Nym. I shall have my eight shillings I won of you at betting?
Pist. A noble shalt thou have, and present pay; And liquor likewise will I give to thee, And friendship shall combine, and brotherhood: I'll live by Nym, and Nym shall live by me. Is not this just? for I shall sutler be Unto the camp, and profits will accrue. Give me thy hand.
Nym. I shall have my noble?
Pist. In cash most justly paid.
Nym. Well then, that’s the humour of’t.

Re-enter Hostess.

Host. As ever you come of women, come in quickly to Sir John. Ah, poor heart! he is so shak’d of a burning quotidian tertian, that it is most lamentable to behold. Sweet men, come to him.
Nym. The king hath run bad humours on the knight; that’s the even of it.
Pist. Nym, thou hast spoke the right; His heart is fracted and corroborate.

105-6. I shall . . . betting?] Q, added Capell. 116. that’s] F 2; that F 1. Re-enter] Theobald; Enter F. 117. come of] F 1, Dover Wilson; came of Q, F 2. 118. Ah] Pope; A F.

101. Sword is an oath] Dover Wilson compares Ham. 1. v. 147.
105-6. I . . . betting] The addition of this line from Q gives the necessary continuity.
107. noble] 6s. 8d. A liberal discount for cash down!
107. present] immediate.
111. sutler] seller of provisions to the army.
112. profits will accrue] there will be pickings.
119. quotidian tertian] The feverish symptoms of the quotidian recur daily while those of the tertian recur on alternate days. The Hostess is thoroughly confused over the names of the fevers.
121 run . . . on] vented his ill-humour on (Moore Smith).
122. that’s . . . is] that’s the truth of the matter.
124. fracted and corroborate] Editors generally assume that Pistol is involved by his latinisms in an amusing self-contradiction, though they tacitly ignore the malapropism that this assumption implics. Pistol may be
Nym. The king is a good king: but it must be as it may; he passes some humours and careers.
Pist. Let us condole the knight; for, lambkins, we will live.

[Exeunt.

SCENE II.—Southampton. A council-chamber.

Enter Exeter, Bedford, and Westmoreland.

Bed. 'Fore God, his grace is bold to trust these traitors.
Exe. They shall be apprehended by and by.

Scene ii


continuing the theme of "bad humours" mentioned by Nym, and "corroborate" may stand for "corrupted", i.e. Falstaff’s grief has caused his heart to swell with illhumours (cf. John iv. ii. 79-81 and Ham. iv. iv. 27-9); "Fracted" then would mean "abashed", "humbled", as in the medieval phrase "fractus animus".

Alternatively, the phrase may be the "broken and contrite heart" from the neck-verse psalm 51 misconstrued in Pistolic jargon.

As, however, Pistol is not guilty of a malapropism elsewhere, any possible interpretation of the phrase as it stands must be considered. The puritan Perkins, writing of repentance (Works, i. 378) gives a specialized meaning to the word "corroboration": "The cause why a Christian cannot quite fal away from grace, is this; after that he is sanctified he receueth from God another speciall grace which may be called Corroboration."

In other words Falstaff, repentant for the last time, has humbled his "hardness of heart" ("fracted") and is receiving grace ("corroborate") ready for his translation to "Arthur's bosom".

126. passes... careers] indulges in some wild and freakish behaviour. Evans notes that "to pass a career" was a recognized phrase in horsemanship and meant to make a short gallop at full speed. He quotes Baret, Alvector, 1580, for the definition, "the short turning of a nimble horse, now this way, nowe that way".

127. condole] condole with.

Scene ii

An account of the plot and of the unmasking of the conspirators is given in Hall and Holinshed. Shakespeare has added the incident of the drunkard who reviled Henry and the commissions which are presented to the conspirators. He may have drawn upon Chelidonia, p. 137, who relates how a soldier was pardoned by Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, for drunkenly, reviling him. Le Fèvre, I. 222-3, may also have provided an idea which Shakespeare developed. He recounts how Henry assembled his council including the conspirators and told them of a plot to seize his crown, an act of treachery
West. How smooth and even they do bear themselves!
As if allegiance in their bosoms sat,
Crowned with faith and constant loyalty.

Bed. The king hath note of all that they intend,
By interception which they dream not of.

Exe. Nay, but the man that was his bedfellow,
Whom he hath dull'd and cloy'd with gracious favours,
That he should, for a foreign purse, so sell
His sovereign's life to death and treachery!

Trumpets sound. Enter King Henry, Scroop,
Cambridge, Grey, and Attendants.

K. Hen. Now sits the wind fair, and we will aboard,
My Lord of Cambridge, and my kind Lord of Masham,
And you, my gentle knight, give me your thoughts:
Think you not that the powers we bear with us
Will cut their passage through the force of France,
Doing the execution and the act
For which we have in head assembled them?
Scroop. No doubt, my liege, if each man do his best.

K. Hen. I doubt not that; since we are well persuaded
We carry not a heart with us from hence
That grows not in a fair consent with ours;
Nor leave not one behind that doth not wish;
Success and conquest to attend on us.

Cam. Never was monarch better fear'd and lov'd
Than is your majesty: there's not, I think, a subject


he found it impossible to believe. If, however, it turned out to be true, he asked each in turn what punishment should be meted out to the plotters. The three guilty men advised a death so cruel that it would deter others and thus convicted themselves. See Introduction, p. xxvii.

4-5. As if ... loyalty] An ironic echo of 2 Chorus 21-2.

7. By interception] It was the Earl of March himself who informed Henry of the plot.

8. bedfellow] Scroop.

9. dull'd and cloy'd] whose appetites have been satisfied and surfeited.

10. foreign purse] So Hall and Holinshed, but they add that the conspirators hoped to place the Earl of March on the throne. Cf. II. 155-7.

22. grows ... consent] is not in agreement.
That sits in heart-grief and uneasiness
Under the sweet shade of your government.

**Grey.** True: those that were your father’s enemies
Have steep’d their galls in honey, and do serve you
With hearts create of duty and of zeal.

**K. Hen.** We therefore have great cause of thankfulness,
And shall forget the office of our hand,
Sooner than quittance of desert and merit
According to the weight and worthiness.

**Scroop.** So service shall with steeled sinews toil,
And labour shall refresh itself with hope,
To do your grace incessant services.

**K. Hen.** We judge no less. Uncle of Exeter,
Enlarge the man committed yesterday
That rail’d against our person: we consider
It was excess of wine that set him on;
And on his more advice we pardon him.

**Scroop.** That’s mercy, but too much security:
Let him be punish’d, sovereign, lest example
Breed, by his sufferance, more of such a kind.

**K. Hen.** O, let us yet be merciful.

**Cam.** So may your highness, and yet punish too.

**Grey.** Sir,
You show great mercy, if you give him life,
After the taste of much correction.

**K. Hen.** Alas, your too much love and care of me
Are heavy orisons ’gainst this poor wretch!
If little faults, proceeding on distemper,

---


33. *forget* . . . *hand*] A possible reminiscence of Ps. cxxxvii. Noble quotes the Genevan version, “let my right hand forget to play”.

40. *Enlarge*] set free.

40-3. Cf. Chelidonius, p. 137 and first note to this scene.

43. *on his more advice*] on his thinking better of it.

44. *security*] over-confidence. Cf.

49. *Sir*] F (l. 50).

---


33. *forget* . . . *hand*] A possible reminiscence of Ps. cxxxvii. Noble quotes the Genevan version, “let my right hand forget to play”.

40. *Enlarge*] set free.

40-3. Cf. Chelidonius, p. 137 and first note to this scene.

43. *on his more advice*] on his thinking better of it.

44. *security*] over-confidence. Cf.

49. *Sir*] F (l. 50).

---


33. *forget* . . . *hand*] A possible reminiscence of Ps. cxxxvii. Noble quotes the Genevan version, “let my right hand forget to play”.

40. *Enlarge*] set free.

40-3. Cf. Chelidonius, p. 137 and first note to this scene.

43. *on his more advice*] on his thinking better of it.

44. *security*] over-confidence. Cf.

49. *Sir*] F (l. 50).

---


33. *forget* . . . *hand*] A possible reminiscence of Ps. cxxxvii. Noble quotes the Genevan version, “let my right hand forget to play”.

40. *Enlarge*] set free.

40-3. Cf. Chelidonius, p. 137 and first note to this scene.

43. *on his more advice*] on his thinking better of it.

44. *security*] over-confidence. Cf.

49. *Sir*] F (l. 50).
Shall not be wink'd at, how shall we stretch our eye
When capital crimes, chew'd, swallow'd, and digested,
Appear before us? We'll yet enlarge that man,
Though Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey, in their dear care
And tender preservation of our person,
Would have him punish'd. And now to our French causes:
Who are the late commissioners?

Cam. I one, my lord:
Your highness bade me ask for it to-day.

Scroop. So did you me, my liege.

Grey. And I, my royal sovereign.

K. Hen. Then, Richard Earl of Cambridge, there is yours;
There yours, Lord Scroop of Masham; and, sir knight,
Grey of Northumberland, this same is yours:
Read them; and know, I know your worthiness.
My Lord of Westmoreland, and uncle Exeter,
We will aboard to-night. Why, how now, gentlemen!
What see you in those papers that you lose
So much complexion? Look ye, how they change!
Their cheeks are paper. Why, what read you there,
That have so cowarded and chas'd your blood
Out of appearance?

Cam. I do confess my fault,
And do submit me to your highness' mercy.

Grey, Scroop. To which we all appeal.

K. Hen. The mercy that was quick in us but late
By your own counsel is suppress'd and kill'd:
You must not dare, for shame, to talk of mercy;
For your own reasons turn into your bosoms,
As dogs upon their masters, worrying you.

58. dear] Dover Wilson suggests an ironical quibble, (a) deeply felt, (b) direct. For the latter sense cf. R2 1. iii. 151, "dear exile".
61. lately appointed.
63. if] the written commission.
76. appearance sight.
79-81. The mercy ... mercy] Cf. Eccles. xxviii. 4, "Hee that sheweth no mercie to a man which is like himselfe, how dare hee aske forgiveness of his sinnes?" In line with Noble's findings, quotations are taken from the Bishops' Bible except where otherwise stated.
80. As... masters] Possibly a reminiscence of Acteon's fate. He, having surprised Diana bathing, was turned by her into a stag and pursued and killed by his own hounds.
See you, my princes and my noble peers,
These English monsters! My Lord of Cambridge here,
You know how apt our love was to accord
To furnish him with all appertinents
Belonging to his honour; and this man
Hath, for a few light crowns, lightly conspir'd,
And sworn unto the practices of France,
To kill us here in Hampton: to the which
This knight, no less for bounty bound to us
Than Cambridge is, hath likewise sworn. But O,
What shall I say to thee, Lord Scroop? thou cruel,
Ingrateful, savage and inhuman creature!
Thou that didst bear the key of all my counsels,
That knew'st the very bottom of my soul,
That almost might'st have coin'd me into gold
Would'st thou have practis'd on me for thy use,
May it be possible that foreign hire
Could out of thee extract one spark of evil
That might annoy my finger? 'tis so strange
That, though the truth of it stands off as gross
As black and white, my eye will scarcely see it.
Treason and murder ever kept together,
As two yoke-devils sworn to either's purpose,
Working so grossly in a natural cause

87. him] added F 2. 99. use,] Camb.; use? F. 107. a natural]
F 2; an naturall F 1.

84. English monsters] unnatural creatures, abortions, of the kind displayed to the Elizabethan public. To the latter, monsters were invariably African; possibly this could be traced back to the proverb derived from Pliny, Historia Naturalis II. viii. 49, "Ex Africa semper aliquid novi". Henry ironically introduces the traitors to his noblemen bitterly emphasizing the word English. Cf. Nashe, Martin's Month's Mind, Preface, "These men, would I call (as well I might) Monsters; save that in these misceevous daies, wherein our Europa, is become an Africa, in bringing dailie foorth newe monsters, I can account them but ordinarie Vermin".

86. accord] agree, consent.
89. light ... lightly] treacherous ... readily.
90. practices] plots.
98-9. Scroop had been Treasurer until 1441.

99. Would'st ... use] if you had used me for your own ends.
100. May] can.
102. might] could.
102. annoy] hurt.
103. stands off as gross] stands out as plain.
107-8. Working ... them] working so obviously in a cause natural to
That admiration did not hoop at them:
But thou, 'gainst all proportion, didst bring in
Wonder to wait on treason and on murder:
And whatsoever cunning fiend it was
That wrought upon thee so preposterously
Hath got the voice in hell for excellence:
All other devils that suggest by treasons
Do botch and bungle up damnation
With patches, colours, and with forms, being fetch'd
From glistening semblances of piety;
But he that temper'd thee bade thee stand up,
Gave thee no instance why thou should'st do treason,
Unless to dub thee with the name of traitor.
If that same demon that hath gull'd thee thus
Should with his lion gait walk the whole world,
He might return to vastly Tartar back,
And tell the legions: "I can never win

114. All] Hanmer; And F.

them that they aroused no outcry of astonishment.
108. admiration] wonder.
108. hoop] whoop, outcry. Cf. ATL. m. ii. 204.
109. proportion] natural order.
111-12. And ... preposterously] Cf. Pseudo-Elmham, Vita, p. 36, "... suggestione diabolic a insubversionem Christianissimi principis ... prodi torie conspirarunt".
112. preposterously] unnaturally.
113. Hath ... voice] has won the vote, is acknowledged.
114. suggest] tempt.
115-17. Do ... piety] clumsily attempt to conceal that the treasons will damn a man's soul by covering them with shoddy adornments, false pretexts, and with illusory outward forms, mere tricks simulating the bright outward appearances of piety.
116. colours] pretexts. A rhetorical term used for proofs that are suspect. Cf. LLL. iv. ii. 156; "colourable colours". Hoccleve in his poem addressed to Oldastle condemns those who have perverted him with their "sly coloured arguments" (281).
116. fetch'd] derived from. Probably with an echo of "fetch", a trick, decoy. For the construction Moore Smith compares 1H4 i. iii. 49, "smarting with my words being cold".
118. temper'd thee] moulded you to his will—as Falstaff Shallow. Cf. 2H4 iv. iii. 142, "I have him already tempering between my finger and thumb".
118. bade thee stand up] ordered you to support his cause.
120. Unless ... traitor] unless it was to confer on you the rank of Sir Traitor.
122. lion gait] Cf. 1 Pet. v. 8, "your adversary the devil, as a roaming lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour".
123. Tartar] i.e. Tartarus, the place of torment in classical mythology.
124. legions] Cf. Mark v. 9, Legion, the name of the unclean spirit, "for we are many", and Tw.N. m. iv. 96-8.
A soul so easy as that Englishman's.
O, how hast thou with jealously infected
The sweetness of affiance! Show men dutiful?
Why, so didst thou: seem they grave and learned?
Why, so didst thou: come they of noble family?
Why, so didst thou: seem they religious?
Why, so didst thou: or are they spare in diet,
Free from gross passion or of mirth or anger,
Constant in spirit, not swerving with the blood,
Garnish'd and deck'd in modest complement,
Not working with the eye without the ear,
And but in purged judgment trusting neither?
Such and so finely bolted didst thou seem:
And thus thy fall hath left a kind of blot,
To mark the full-fraught man and best indue'd
With some suspicion. I will weep for thee;
For this revolt of thine, methinks, is like
Another fall of man. Their faults are open:
Arrest them to the answer of the law;
And God acquit them of their practices!

Exe. I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Richard Earl of Cambridge.
I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Henry Lord Scroop of Masham.
I arrest thee of high treason, by the name of Thomas Grey, knight, of Northumberland.

Scroop. Our purposes God justly hath discover'd,
And I repent my fault more than my death;

---

139-40. To ... With] Malone; To make thee full fraught man, and best indue'd
With F; To mark the full-fraught man, the best endow'd, With Capell.

126. jealousy] suspicion.
127. affiance] trust.
134. complement] outward bearing or appearance.
135. Not ... ear] Not trusting the evidence of either eye or ear alone.
137. bolted] sifted (like flour), refined.
139. To ... indue'd] It seems best to follow Malone's emendation which is based on that of Theobald.

"Make" for "mark" or "marke" is a possible misreading in the secretary hand.
139. full-fraught ... indue'd] fully laden and endowed with the best qualities.
149. to ... law] to answer the charges brought against them.
148. Henry] The reading "Thomas" was probably caught from l. 150.
Which I beseech your highness to forgive,
Although my body pay the price of it.

Cam. For me, the gold of France did not seduce,
Although I did admit it as a motive
The sooner to effect what I intended:
But God be thanked for prevention;
Which I in sufferance heartily will rejoice,
Beseeching God and you to pardon me.

Grey. Never did faithful subject more rejoice
At the discovery of most dangerous treason
Than I do this hour joy o'er myself,
Prevented from a damned enterprise.
My fault, but not my body, pardon, sovereign.

K. Hen. God quit you in his mercy! Hear your sentence.
You have conspir'd against our royal person,
Join'd with an enemy proclaim'd, and from his coffers
Receiv'd the golden earnest of our death;
Wherein you would have sold your king to slaughter,
His princes and his peers to servitude,
His subjects to oppression and contempt,
And his whole kingdom into desolation.
Touching our person seek we no revenge;
But we our kingdom's safety must so tender,
Whose ruin you have sought, that to her laws
We do deliver you. Get you therefore hence,
Poor miserable wretches, to your death;
The taste whereof, God of his mercy give you
Patience to endure, and true repentance
Of all your dear offences! Bear them hence.

[Exeunt Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey, guarded.]

159. I] added F 2.
F 1; you three sought F 2.
Exit F.

155-7. Holinshed gives the details. Moore Smith notes that this plot is the beginning of the Yorkist claim to the throne, since the real motive was to place the Earl of March on the throne.

165. [Exeunt Cambridge, Scroop, and Grey, guarded] Camb.;


169. golden earnest] advance part-payment as a guarantee of further payment when the work has been done.

175. tender] cherish.

181. dear] dire, grievous.
Now, lords, for France; the enterprise whereof
Shall be to you, as us, like glorious.
We doubt not of a fair and lucky war,
Since God so graciously hath brought to light
This dangerous treason lurking in our way
To hinder our beginnings. We doubt not now
But every rub is smoothed on our way.
Then forth, dear countrymen: let us deliver
Our puissance into the hand of God,
Putting it straight in expedition.
Cheerly to sea; the signs of war advance:
No king of England, if not king of France.

[Flourish. Exeunt.

SCENE III.—London. Before a Tavern.

Enter Pistol, Hostess, Nym, Bardolph, and Boy.

Host. Prithree, honey-sweet husband, let me bring thee
to Staines.

Pist. No; for my manly heart doth earn.
Bardolph, be blithe; Nym, rouse thy vaunting veins:
Boy, bristle thy courage up; for Falstaff he is dead,
And we must earn therefore.


Scene iii

London . . . Tavern] Capell. Enter . . . Boy] Capell; enter Pistoll,
Nim, Bardolph, Boy, and Hostesse F.

183. like] alike, equally.
188. rub] obstacle. A word bor-
rrowed from the game of bowls in
which it was used to describe any
unevenness of the ground which
impeded or diverted the bowl. Cf.
John iii. iv. 128-9, "Shall blow each
dust, each straw, each little rub Out
of the path ".
191. in expedition] in motion.
192. the signs . . . advance] raise
the ensigns or standards.

178, "Advanced their eyelids".

Scene iii

See Introduction, p. xli.
2. Staines] i.e. on the road to
Southampton.
3. earn] grieve, mourn.
iv. iii. 26.
5. bristle] "bristle" F. Possibly a
Shakespearian spelling.
Bard. Would I were with him, wheresome’er he is, 
either in heaven or in hell!

Host. Nay, sure, he’s not in hell: he’s in Arthur’s 
bosom, if ever man went to Arthur’s bosom. A’ 10
made a finer end, and went away an it had been 
any christom child; a’ parted even just between 
twelve and one, even at the turning o’ the tide: 
for after I saw him fumble with the sheets and 
play with flowers and smile upon his fingers’ end, 15
I knew there was but one way; for his nose was 
as sharp as a pen, and a’ babbled of green fields.

16:19-31 for the whole parable of 
Dives and Lazarus. This parable 
and the Prodigal Son were popular 
with Falstaff. Cf. 1H4 iii. iii. 34; 
iv. i. 26, etc.

11. finer end] i.e. than going to hell.

12. christom child] A child in its 
first month after baptism during 
which time it wore a white robe called 
a chrism-cloth (chrism, the oil then 
used for anointing), hence an inno-
cent babe.

12-15. a’ parted . . . tide] A very 
Holland, 1601, II. 98, “Hereunto 
addeth Aristote . . . that no living 
creature dieth but in the reflux and 
ebbe of the sea.”

14-17. fumble . . . pen] Shakespeare’s 
version of a portion of the famous 
Hippocratic “facies” contained in 
the Prognostics where Hippocrates 
describes the signs of approaching 
death. Editions of the Prognostics 
were available in Greek, in Latin, 
French and possibly English transla-
tions accompanied by the commentar-
ies of Galen and others. Christopher 
à Vega’s Latin text (1552) has the 
following: “De manuum vero latione 
hacse nose oportet quibuscaunque in 
acutis febribus . . . ante faciem ferun-
tur vel venantur frustra, aut colli-
gunt festucas, aut stamina de vestibus 
euellunt, vel stipules de parieta 
carpunt, omnes malas esse atque 
lethales” (Liber Prognosticon, p. 76) 
and earlier, “Erit autem talis nasus 
gracilis in extremis” (p. 30).

Peter Lowe’s translation of the 
latter runs, “hee shall esteeme it in 
perill and danger of death when the 
nose and the nostrils are extenuated 
and sharpened by the same Malady” 
(The Presages of Divine Hippocrates, 
1611, Sig. A4v.) Dover Wilson 
cites Lupton, Thousand Notable Things, 
1576, Bk. IX, “ . . . and his nose 
waue sharpe—if he pull strawes, or 
the cloathes of his bedde . . .”. 
One wonders whether Galen’s com-
ment that the nose becomes “aquil-
linus” may have suggested a “quill” 
and thus inspired the immortal 
“sharp as a pen” as the Hostess’ 
muddled version.

17. a’ babbled] Theobald’s famous 
emendation has received support 
from modern studies of the secretary 
handwriting. The original spelling 
was presumably “babid” (Note the 
F spelling “bible”, iv. i. 71), and 
the similarity between “t” and “b”, 
“e” and “a” in that handwriting 
makes misreading likely (see Greg, 
Principles, pp. 129, 155, 172). Thiselton, 
Notulae Criticae, 1904, p. 14, 
suggested “Tatld”, his point being
“How now, Sir John?” quoth I: “what, man! be o’ good cheer.” So a’ cried out “God, God, God!” three or four times: now I, to comfort him, bid him a’ should not think of God, I hop’d there was no need to trouble himself with any such thoughts yet. So a’ bade me lay more clothes on his feet: I put my hand into the bed and felt them, and they were as cold as any stone; then I felt to his knees, and so upward, and upward, and all was as cold as any stone.

_Nym._ They say he cried out of sack.

_Host._ Ay, that a’ did.

_Bard._ And of women.

_Host._ Nay, that a’ did not.

_Boy._ Yes, that a’ did; and said they were devils incarnate.

_Host._ A’ could never abide carnation; ’twas a colour he never lik’d.

_Boy._ A’ said once, the devil would have him about women.

_Host._ A’ did in some sort, indeed, handle women; but

19. _be o’ good_ Capell; _be a good F._
26. _upward, and upward_ Q, F 3,
Camb.; _up-peer’d and upward F 1._
32. _devils_ Deules F.
34. Host._
Rowe; Woman F. 36. _devil_ Deule F.

that if the capital T of the F “Table” was in the manuscript before the compositor, a misreading of “B” for “T” would be highly improbable. Bradley, _The Academy_, 21 April, 1894, and _O.E.D._ “field” 14, sought to keep the pen image by reading “pen on a table of green field”, interpreting “green field” in the light of a 15th century example as “green cloth”. But “babbled of green fields” is surely more in character with the Falstaff who quoted the Scriptures, who heard the chimes at midnight, and who lost his voice halloowing of anthems. Now he is in the valley of the shadow, the “green pasture” of Psalm 23 might well be on his lips.

“Babbled” may be an unconscious reminiscence of Fox’s account of Oldcastle’s trial. Oldcastle’s enemies issued a formal repentance falsely stating that it was written by Oldcastle, and “caused it to be blown abroad by their feed servants, friends, and babbling sir Johns”. (_Acts & Monuments_ III. 338.)

28. _of sack_ against sack.

32, 36. _devils_, _devil_ “Deules... Deule” F. A Shakespearian spelling.

32–3. _devils incarnate_ This phrase, a somewhat daring paradox, was made popular by Lodge, _Wits Miserie_, 1596, Sig. B1v, in which he describes the “Devils Incarnate of this age”.

33. _incarnate_ (a) in the flesh, (b) red.
then he was rheumatic, and talked of the whore of Babylon.

Boy. Do you not remember a' saw a flea stick upon Bardolph's nose, and a' said it was a black soul burning in hell?

Bard. Well, the fuel is gone that maintained that fire: that's all the riches I got in his service.

Nym. Shall we shog? the king will be gone from Southampton.

Pist. Come, let's away. My love, give me thy lips.
Look to my chattels and my moveables:
Let senses rule, the word is "Pitch and pay";
Trust none;
For oaths are straws, men's faiths are wafer-cakes,
And hold-fast is the only dog, my duck:
Therefore, Caveto be thy counsellor.

43. hell] F, Q. 3, Dover Wilson after Greg; hell-fire Q. 1, 2, Capell.
50. word] Q. 1, 3, Rowe (ed. 3); world F, Q. 2.
54. Caveto] F; copshtua Q.

39. rheumatic] F spelling "rumative" indicates the current pronunciation ð. Between the open and closed ð there was very little difference in Shakespeare's time. Cf. the quibble on room—Rome in Cæs., 1. ii. 155. Here the pronunciation suggests Rome—atic in preparation for the "whore of Babylon".

39-40. whore of Babylon] (a) the "scarlet woman" of Rev. xvii. 4-5, and hence a continuation of the thought of "incarnate" and "carnation", (b) the Church of Rome. This expression was applied by Wyclif and the Lollards to the Church of Rome whence its use became common in Elizabethan times. Cf. Oeland's tract, The Fountain ... of Variance ... wherein is declared ... that Rome ... is signified ... by name of Babylon ... in the Revelation of St. John, 1589. For the allusion to Oldcastle in these lines, see Introduction, p. xlix.

44. the fuel ... fire] i.e. the liquor that Falstaff provided for Bardolph.
Cf. 1H4 iii. iii. 52-4, "I have maintained that salamander of yours with fire any time this two-and-thirty years".

45. all the ... service] Cf. 1H4 iii. iii. 88-9, "look upon his face; what call you rich? let them coin his nose".

50. Let senses rule] keep on the alert, or, let good sense prevail.
50. word] watchword.
52. men's faiths ... wafer-cakes] men's promises are early broken. Cf. proverb, "Promises and pie-crusts are made to be broken" (Apperson, p. 513).
53. hold-fast ... dog] Proverbial, "Brag is a good dog, but Holdfast is a better" (Apperson, p. 63).
54. Caveto] beware.
Go, clear thy crystals. Yoke-fellows in arms,
Let us to France; like horse-leeches, my boys,
To suck, to suck, the very blood to suck!
Boy. And that's but unwholesome food, they say.
Pist. Touch her soft mouth, and march.
Bard. Farewell, hostess. [Kissing her. Nym. I cannot kiss, that is the humour of it; but
adieu.
Pist. Let housewifery appear; keep close, I thee com-
mand.
Host. Farewell; adieu. [Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—France. The French King's Palace.

Flourish. Enter the French King, the Dauphin, the Dukes of
Berri and Bretagne, the Constable, and Others.

Fr. King. Thus comes the English with full power upon us;
And more than carefully it us concerns
To answer royally in our defences.
Therefore the Dukes of Berri and of Bretagne,
Of Brabant and of Orleans, shall make forth,
And you, Prince Dauphin, with all swift dispatch,

60. Kissing her] added Capell.

Scene iv

Flourish . . . Others] Camb. Flourish. Enter the French King, attended; the
Dauphin, the Dukes of Berri and Bretagne, the Constable, and Others Camb.
Flourish. Enter the French King, the Dolphin, the Dukes of Berry and
Britaine F.

55. clear thy crystals] wipe your eyes. "Crystals" is occasionally
used for "eyes" during this period, but not, however, with Pistol's
ludicrous affectation.

58. that's . . . food] Dover Wilson quotes A. Boorde, Dyetary, 1542
(E.E.T.S., Extra Series 19), p. 276,
"The blade of all beestes & fowles is not prayed,
for it is hard of digestyon". Opinion varied, how-
ever, and other writers specified the
blood of bulls as being particularly
unwholesome.

63. Let . . . close] show your virtues as a housewife, and occupy yourself
within the house.

Scene iv

See note to iii. v. Berri has no
speaking part and does not appear
elsewhere.

r. comes] Cf. Prologue 9. Wright
suggests, in view of "royally" (l. 3),
that "English" stands for "English
king" and compares iv. iv. 78; v.
i. 218. This seems unnecessary.

2-3. and . . . defences] and we
should be more than usually careful
to see that our defences are fully
equipped to meet the attack.
To line and new repair our towns of war
With men of courage and with means defendant;
For England his approaches makes as fierce
As waters to the sucking of a gulf.
It fits us then to be as provident
As fear may teach us out of late examples
Left by the fatal and neglected English
Upon our fields.

Dau. My most redoubted father,
It is most meet we arm us 'gainst the foe;
For peace itself should not so dull a kingdom,
Though war nor no known quarrel were in question,
But that defences, musters, preparations,
Should be maintain'd, assembled, and collected,
As were a war in expectation.
Therefore, I say 'tis meet we all go forth
To view the sick and feeble parts of France:
And let us do it with no show of fear;
No, with no more than if we heard that England
Were busied with a Whitsun morris-dance:
For, my good liege, she is so idly king'd
Her sceptre so fantastically borne
By a vain, giddy, shallow, humorous youth,
That fear attends her not.

Con. O peace, Prince Dauphin!
You are too much mistaken in this king.
Question your grace the late ambassadors,
With what great state he heard their embassy,

7. line] reinforce.
10. gulf] whirlpool. Cf. iv. iii. 82.
12. late examples] i.e. Cressy, 1346, and Poitiers, 1356.
13. fatal and neglected] fatally underrated or despised.
19. maintain'd . . . collected] The verbs correspond in order to the
tones in l. 18.
25. Whitsun morris-dance] The morris or morish dance was a grotesque
dance in which the performers blackened their faces and wore
fanciful costume with bells. The
name seems to have originated from
the blackened faces of the performers who were thought, incor-
crectly, to represent Moors. The
dance was frequently performed at
Whitsuntide when popular legendary
characters were represented, e.g.
Robin Hood and Maid Marian. Cf.
Wint. iv. iii. 133-4 (Chambers,
27. Her sceptre . . . borne] her royal
power so freakishly and fancifully
exercised. Cf. i. ii. 250-5.
28. humorous] capricious, unstable.
29. attends] accompanies.
How well supplied with noble counsellors,
How modest in exception, and withal
How terrible in constant resolution,
And you shall find his vanities forespent
Were but the outside of the Roman Brutus,
Covering discretion with a coat of folly;
As gardeners do with ordure hide those roots
That shall first spring and be most delicate.

Dau. Well, 'tis not so, my lord high constable;
But though we think it so, it is no matter:
In cases of defence 'tis best to weigh
The enemy more mighty than he seems:
So the proportions of defence are fill'd;
Which of a weak and niggardly projection
Doth, like a miser, spoil his coat with scanting
A little cloth.

Fr. King. Think we King Harry strong;
And, princes, look you strongly arm to meet him.
The kindred of him hath been flesh'd upon us,
And he is bred out of that bloody strain
That haunted us in our familiar paths;
Witness our too much memorable shame
When Cressy battle fatally was struck,
And all our princes captiv'd by the hand
Of that black name, Edward, Black Prince of Wales;

34. in exception] in demurring, in raising an objection. Cf. iv. ii. 25.
37. Brutus] Lucius Junius Brutus, one of the first two consuls, 509 B.C. He is stated to have assumed dullness of intellect ("brutus", heavy, stupid) to preserve his life from Tarquinius Superbus, his uncle. He took part in the expulsion of the Tarquins from Rome. Cf. Liv., ll. 1807-17.
45. so...fill'd] in this way means for defence are provided in full.
46. which...projection] which, if on a small and scanty scale.
47. scanting] begrudging.
50. flesh'd] trained in war at our cost. Hounds and hawks were trained by feeding them on flesh.
51. strain] breed.
52. haunted] pursued. Cf. 1H4 v. iii. 4, "I do haunt thee in the battle thus", and Troil. iv. i. 9-10.
54. when...struck] Holinshed has later in the story, "King Edward the third a little before that had stricken the battle of Cressie", III. 551 (Wright).
54. struck] fought. The use of "strike" in this sense has persisted in the phrase "stricken field" for "battlefield".
57. mountain] great above all others. F reading has been retained, awkward
Up in the air, crown'd with the golden sun,
Saw his heroical seed, and smil'd to see him,
Mangle the work of nature, and deface
The patterns that by God and by French fathers
Had twenty years been made. This is a stem
Of that victorious stock; and let us fear
The native mightiness and fate of him.

Enter a Messenger.

*Mess.* Ambassadors from Harry King of England
Do crave admittance to your majesty.

*Fr. King.* We'll give them present audience. Go, and
bring them.

[Exeunt Messenger and certain Lords.

You see this chase is hotly follow'd, friends.

*Dauphin.* Turn head, and stop pursuit; for coward dogs
Most spend their mouths when what they seem to
threaten
Runs far before them. Good my sovereign,
Take up the English short, and let them know.
Of what a monarchy you are the head:
Self-love, my liege, is not so vile a sin
As self-neglecting.

Re-enter Lords, with Exeter and Train.

*Fr. King.* From our brother of England?

*Exe.* From him; and thus he greets your majesty.
He wills you, in the name of God Almighty,
That you divest yourself, and lay apart

67. Exeunt... Lords] added Capell. 68. follow'd] Pope; followed F. 75. Re-enter... Train] Capell; Enter Exeter F.

though it is. It seems possible that Shakespeare originally wrote "mighty" (cf. i. ii. 102) and that the compositor's eye erred by attraction to the second "mountain".

64. The native... him] the great destiny to which he was born.

68-71. For imagery, cf. ii. 50-2; i. ii. 266.

69. Turn head] turn at bay.

69. head] antlers. Cf. 1H6 iv. ii. 51, "Turn on the bloody hounds with heads of steel".

70. spend their mouths] cry, give tongue. Cf. Ven., l. 695.
The borrow’d glories that by gift of heaven,
By law of nature and of nations, longs
To him and to his heirs; namely, the crown
And all wide-stretched honours that pertain
By custom and the ordinance of times
Unto the crown of France. That you may know
’Tis no sinister nor no awkward claim,
Pick’d from the worm-holes of long-vanish’d days,
Nor from the dust of old oblivion rak’d,
He sends you this most memorable line,
In every branch truly demonstrative;
Willing you overlook this pedigree;
And when you find him evenly deriv’d
From his most fam’d of famous ancestors,
Edward the Third, he bids you then resign
Your crown and kingdom, indirectly held
From him the native and true challenger.

Fr. King. Or else what follows?
Exe. Bloody constraint; for if you hide the crown
Even in your hearts, there will he rake for it:
Therefore in fierce tempest is he coming,
In thunder and in earthquake like a Jove,
That, if requiring fail, he will compel;

79. borrow’d] Pope; borrowed F.
79-80. by gift ... nations] i.e. by every right, divine and human.
This conception of universal law was inherited from the medieval modifications of classical theory.
Controlling all things was the divine law knowable only by revelation, within this was the law of nature embodying the philosophical and scientific truths learned by the exercise of the human reasoning powers, and subordinate to this was the law of nations which, although it should be consistent with the law of nature, was in fact a frequent decision by custom and expediency.
80. longs] belong. Cf. Prologue, 9
"longs" is a normal aphantic form from O.E. "gelang".
83. ordinance of times] established practice.
85. awkward] not straightforward, illegitimate.
86-7. Pick’d ... rak’d] "Suggesting (a) selection, (b) search" (Dover Wilson).
87. dust ... rak’d] Cf. Cor. II. iii. 126, "dust on antique time would lie unswept".
88. line] pedigree, line of descent.
91. evenly] directly.
94. indirectly] wrongfully.
95. challenger] claimant.
And bids you, in the bowels of the Lord,  
Deliver up the crown, and to take mercy  
On the poor souls for whom this hungry war  
Opens his vasty jaws; and on your head  
Turning the widow’s tears, the orphans’ cries,  
The dead men’s blood, the prived maidens’ groans,  
For husbands, fathers, and betrothed lovers,  
That shall be swallow’d in this controversy.  
This is his claim, his threat’ning, and my message;  
Unless the Dauphin be in presence here,  
To whom expressly I bring greeting too.  

Fr. King. For us we will consider of this further:  
To-morrow shall you bear our full intent  
Back to our brother of England.

Dau. I stand here for him: what to him from England?  

Exe. Scorn and defiance; slight regard, contempt,  
And any thing that may not misbecome  
The mighty sender, doth he prize you at.  
Thus says my king: an if your father’s highness  
Do not, in grant of all demands at large,  
Sweeten the bitter mock you sent his majesty,  
He’ll call you to so hot an answer of it,  
That caves and womby vaultages of France

107. prived] Ed.; priue F; pining Q, Pope.  
swallowed F.  
110. swallow’d] Pope;  
greeting too] Q, F 2; greeting to F 1.

102. in the bowels of the Lord]  
Shakespeare may be following Holinshed. The phrase, however, was  
well known from Phil. i. 8, “in the  
bowels of Jesus Christ”.

106-9. Turning ... controversy]  
Although many descriptions of the evils of war had been written, this  
seems a clear reminiscence of Hall,  
iiiV, the description of the grief of the  
French after Agincourt:  
“And yet the dolor was not  
onely hys, for the ladyes souned for  
the deathes of theyr husebandes, the  
Orphalines wepate, and rent their  
heares for the losse of their parentes,  
the sayre damoselles defyed that  
daye in whiche they had lost their  
paramors...”

107. prived] Editors generally have  
followed Pope in adopting the  
Q reading “pinning”. On the other  
hand “prived” (“bereft”) not  
only improves the sense but is at  
least as likely to be misread “privy”  
or “priue” as “pinning”, by an  
“e” “d” misreading and a normal-  
izing of “e” to “i”. O.E.D. quotes  
Hall, p. 195: “kyng Edwardes ii  
sonnes declared bastardes, & in  
conclusion priu’d of their liues”.

114. womby vaultages] hollow  
caverns.
Shall chide your trespass and return your mock
In second accent of his ordinance.

Dau. Say, if my father render fair return,
It is against my will; for I desire
Nothing but odds with England: to that end,
As matching to his youth and vanity,
I did present him with the Paris-balls.

Exe. He'll make your Paris Louvre shake for it,
Were it the mistress-court of mighty Europe:
And, be assur'd, you'll find a difference,
As we his subjects have in wonder found,
Between the promise of his greener days
And these he masters now. Now he weighs time
Even to the utmost grain; that you shall read
In your own losses, if he stay in France.

Fr. King. To-morrow shall you know our mind at full.

[Flourish.

Exe. Dispatch us with all speed, lest that our king
Come here himself to question our delay;
For he is footed in this land already.

Fr. King. You shall be soon dispatch'd with fair condi-
tions;
A night is but small breath and little pause
To answer matters of this consequence.

[Exeunt.

132. Louvre] Pope; Louer Q., F 1; Lover
134. difference] Camb.; diff'rence F.
F 3.
126. second accent] echo.
126. ordinance] ordnance.
131. Paris-balls] tennis-balls were so called.
132. Louvre] F 1 spelling “Louer” and F3 “Lover” give the point of “mistress-court” in the next line.
136. greener days] Cf. i. ii. 120.
137. masters] possesses. Cf. Sonnet 106, 8, “Even such a beauty as you master now”.
140. Flourish] Dyce transferred this stage direction to the end of the scene. Capell's justification of its position here is surely sound: “the French king rises from his throne in this place, as dismissing the embassy... it shews the boldness of Exeter, who will not be so dismiss'd”.
143. For...already] Exeter's embassy took place in February, 1415. Henry did not actually land until 14 August.
ACT III

Enter Chorus.

Thus with imagin'd wing our swift scene flies
In motion of no less celerity
Than that of thought. Suppose that you have seen
The well-appointed king at Hampton pier
Embark his royalty; and his brave fleet
With silken streamers the young Phoebus fanning:
Play with your fancies, and in them behold
Upon the hempen tackle ship-boys climbing;
Hear the shrill whistle which doth order give
To sounds confus'd; behold the threaden sails,
Borne with th' invisible and creeping wind,
Draw the huge bottoms through the furrow'd sea,
Breasting the lofty surge. O, do but think
You stand upon the rivage and behold
A city on th' inconstant billows dancing;
For so appears this fleet majestical,

ACT III

Chorus

Act III] Pope; Actus Secundus F.
2. F divides after thought.
6. fanning] Rowe; fanning F.
12. furrow'd] Rowe; furrowed F.

ACT III


Chorus

1. imagin'd wing] wing of imagination. Cf. Mer.V. iii. ii. 52, "imagin'd speed".
4. Hampton] Theobald; Dover F.
5. brave] fine, gallant.
6. the young Phoebus fanning] waving against the rising sun. In support of Rowe's emendation "fanning", cf. Mac. i. ii. 49,

"Where the Norweyan banners flout the sky
And fan our people cold",
and Edward III iv. iv. 19-21, where the banners
"cuff the aire
And beat the windes".

The composer may have set up "yn" by misreading "nn" or "n" as "in", namely three minims instead of four or two.
9. whistle] i.e. blown by the master of the ship. Cf. Tp. i. i. 6.
12. bottoms] vessels.
Holding due course to Harfleur. Follow, follow! Grapple your minds to sternage of this navy, And leave your England, as dead midnight still, Guarded with grandsires, babies, and old women, Either past or not arriv'd to pith and puissance: For who is he, whose chin is but enrich'd With one appearing hair, that will not follow These cull'd and choice-drawn cavaliers to France? Work, work your thoughts, and therein see a siege; Behold the ordinance on their carriages, With fatal mouths gaping on girded Harfleur. Suppose th' ambassador from the French comes back; Tells Harry that the king doth offer him Katharine his daughter; and with her, to dowry, Some petty and unprofitable dukedoms: The offer likes not: and the nimble gunner With linstock now the devilish cannon touches, [Alarum, and chambers go off. And down goes all before them. Still be kind, And eche out our performance with your mind. [Exit.


18. Grapple . . . navy] Follow with your minds in the wake of these ships.
19. as . . . still] i.e. still as silent midnight.
27. girded] surrounded, besieged.
28-31. Suppose . . . dukedoms] Actually these offers were made at Winchester in June about two months before Henry landed.
32. nimble gunner] Garrard, Art of Warre, 1591, p. 5, recommends the effectiveness of a “nimble discharge”.
33. linstock] a stick pointed at one end for thrusting in the ground and forked at the other end for holding the gunner’s match. From “lunt” a slow-match and “stock” a stick.
33. touches] touches off, fires.
S.D. chambers] small guns without carriages used for ceremonial salutes.
35. eche] eke. Dover Wilson refers to Pericles 3 Chorus 13, where it rhymes with “speech”.

SCENE I.—France. Before Harfleur.


K. Hen. Once more unto the breach, dear friends, once more, Or close the wall up with our English dead. In peace there's nothing so becomes a man As modest stillness and humility: But when the blast of war blows in our ears, Then imitate the action of the tiger; Stiffen the sinews, conjure up the blood, Disguise fair nature with hard-favour'd rage; Then lend the eye a terrible aspect; Let it pry through the portage of the head Like the brass cannon; let the brow o'erwhelm it As fearfully as doth a galled rock O'erhang and jutty his confounded base, Swill'd with the wild and wasteful ocean. Now set the teeth and stretch the nostril wide, Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit

Scene 1


7. conjure] It is almost heresy to suggest emending any word in this speech, but it is difficult to see how Rowe's emendation "summon" for F "commune", which all editors hitherto have accepted, can possibly be justified. Initial "s" and "c" are not likely to be confused, and "sumnume" is not a likely spelling for "summon". "Conjure", however, spelt "conjure", is almost identical with "commune" (spelt "comune" or "conuine" as Brooks points out). It also offers a satisfactory meaning in view of the current Galenist doctrines of vital spirits contained in the blood. Cf. V. ii. 307, "conjure up the spirit of love". There and in V. ii. 310, 311 F spelling is "conuire". Cf. also MND. m. ii. 158-9.


10. portage] portholes.

11-14. Let . . . ocean] let the brow, frowning in anger overhang the eyes as threateningly as a worn rock overhangs its base which is washed and undermined by wild and destructive waves.

12. galled] fretted, washed away.


14. Swill'd] greedily swallowed.

Cf. R3 v. ii. 7-9,

"The . . . usurping boar Swills your warm blood like wash".

16. bend up] strain to the utmost. A metaphor that is derived from drawing a bow. Cf. Mac. i. vii. 78-80,
To his full height! On, on, you noblest English! Whose blood is fet from fathers of war-proof; Fathers that, like so many Alexanders, Have in these parts from morn till even fought, And sheath'd their swords for lack of argument, Dishonour not your mothers; now attest That those whom you call'd fathers did beget you. Be copy now to men of grosser blood, And teach them how to war. And you, good yeomen, Whose limbs were made in England, show us here The mettle of your pasture; let us swear That you are worth your breeding; which I doubt not; For there is none of you so mean and base That hath not noble lustre in your eyes. I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips, Straining upon the start. The game's afoot: Follow your spirit; and upon this charge Cry, "God for Harry, England, and Saint George!"

[Exeunt. Alarum, and chambers go off.]

32. Straining] Rowe; Straying F.

"bend up Each corporal agent to this terrible feat".

17-21. you . . . argument] Cf. Hall, Henry's speech before Agincourt, xlix, "Frenche men, whome youre noble ancestoures have so often overcome and vanquished".

18. fet] derived.
18. of war-proof] proved in war.

"Unus Pellaeo inveni non sufficit orbis; aestuat infelix angusto limite mundi."

21. argument] i.e. opponents. Cf. iv. i. 146; iv. ii. 23.

22-5. Contrast the Dauphin's reference to "Norman bastards", iii. v. 5-10, 26-31.

24. men] The F compositor may have misread "men" as "mee" (cf. note II. i. 36). Alternatively, Brooks suggests that he may have failed to read a title, or that the tittle had been obliterated, or even that Shakespeare had omitted it.

27. mettle of your pasture] "the fine quality of your rearing" (Moore Smith).

31. slips] leashes.
32. Straining upon the start] straining to start. Cf. "strain at the leash". Rowe's emendation of the F "straying" is generally accepted. See note to 3 chorus 6.

33. Follow your spirit] Cf. i. ii. 128-30.

33. upon this charge] as you charge.
33, 34. charge] George] note the rhyme. Henry makes no appeal to St. George at this siege in either Hall or Holinshed, though the latter records that one of Henry's first acts as king was to cause Convocation to celebrate St. George's day as a double feast. In the Famous Victories the appeal comes before Agincourt. The Liber Metricus, however, has an appeal "Sancte George!" l. 517, and a further reference ll. 575-80.
SCENE I.—France. Before Harfleur.


K. Hen. Once more unto the breach, dear friends, once more, Or close the wall up with our English dead. In peace there’s nothing so becomes a man As modest stillness and humility: But when the blast of war blows in our ears, Then imitate the action of the tiger; Stiffen the sinews, conjure up the blood, Disguise fair nature with hard-favour’d rage; Then lend the eye a terrible aspect; Let it pry through the portage of the head Like the brass cannon; let the brow o’erwhelm it As fearfully as doth a galled rock O’erhang and jutty his confounded base, Swill’d with the wild and wasteful ocean. Now set the teeth and stretch the nostril wide, Hold hard the breath, and bend up every spirit

Scene 1


spelling is “conjure”. Cf. also MND. iii. ii. 158-9.


10. portage] portholes.

11-14. Let . . . ocean] let the brow, frowning in anger overhang the eyes as threateningly as a worn rock overhangs its base which is washed and undermined by wild and destructive waves.

12. galled] fretted, washed away.


14. Swill’d] greedily swallowed.

Cf. Rg v. ii. 7-9,

“The . . . usurping boar

Swills your warm blood like wash”.

16. bend up] strain to the utmost. A metaphor that is derived from drawing a bow. Cf. Mac. i. vii. 78-80,
To his full height! On, on, you noblest English! Whose blood is set from fathers of war-proof; Fathers that, like so many Alexanders, Have in these parts from morn till even fought, And sheath'd their swords for lack of argument. Dishonour not your mothers; now attest That those whom you call'd fathers did beget you. Be copy now to men of grosser blood, And teach them how to war. And you, good yeomen, Whose limbs were made in England, show us here The mettle of your pasture; let us swear That you are worth your breeding; which I doubt not; For there is none of you so mean and base That hath not noble lustre in your eyes.

I see you stand like greyhounds in the slips, Straining upon the start. The game's afoot: Follow your spirit; and upon this charge Cry, "God for Harry, England, and Saint George!"

[Exeunt. Alarum, and chambers go off.

17. noblest] F 2; Noblist F 1.
32. Straining] Rowe; Straying F.

"bend up

Each corporal agent to this terrible feat ".
17-21. you . . . argument] Cf. Hall, Henry's speech before Agincourt, xlix,
"Frenche men, whome youre noble auncestoures have so often overcome and vanquished ".
18. set] derived.
18. of war-proof] proved in war.
19-21. Alexanders . . . argument]
Cf. Juvenal, Satires X,
"Unus Pellaeo inveni non sufficit orbis;
aestuat infelix angusto limite mundi."
21. argument] i.e. opponents. Cf. iv. i. 146; iv. ii. 23.
22-5. Contrast the Dauphin's reference to "Norman bastards", m. v. 5-10, 26-31.
24. men] The F compositor may have misread "men" as "mee" (cf. note II. i. 36). Alternatively, Brooks suggests that he may have failed to read a tittle, or that the tittle had been obliterated, or even that Shakespeare had omitted it.
27. mettle of your pasture] "the fine quality of your rearing" (Moore Smith).
31. slips] leashes.
32. Straining upon the start] straining to start. Cf. "strain at the leash ". Rowe's emendation of the F "straying" is generally accepted. See note to 3 chorus 6.
33. Follow your spirit] Cf. i. ii. 128-30.
33. upon this charge] as you charge.
33, 34. charge] George note the rhyme. Henry makes no appeal to St. George at this siege in either Hall or Holinshed, though the latter records that one of Henry's first acts as king was to cause Convocation to celebrate St. George's day as a double feast. In the Famous Victories the appeal comes before Agincourt. The Liber Metricus, however, has an appeal "Sancte George! " l. 517, and a further reference ll. 575-80.
SCENE II.—The Same.

Enter Nym, Bardolph, Pistol, and Boy.

Bard. On, on, on, on, on! to the breach, to the breach!

Nym. Pray thee, corporal, stay; the knocks are too hot; and for mine own part, I have not a case of lives: the humour of it is too hot, that is the very plain-song of it.

Pist. The plain-song is most just, for humours do abound:
   Knocks go and come, God's vassals drop and die;
   And sword and shield,
   In bloody field,
   Doth win immortal fame.

Boy. Would I were in an alehouse in London! I would give all my fame for a pot of ale, and safety.

Pist. And I:

   If wishes would prevail with me,
   My purpose should not fail with me,
   But thither would I hie.

Boy.

   As duly,
   But not as truly,
   As bird doth sing on bough.

Enter Fluellen.

Flu. Up to the breach, you dogs! avaunt, you cullions!

[Driving them forward.

Scene ii


See Introduction, p. xli.
3. corporal] Cf. ii. i. 2.
4. case] set. A case of pistols was a pair.
5-6. plain-song] the simple air without variations (Evans), the plain truth.

8-11, 15-20. Possibly fragments of old songs.
19. truly] (a) honourably, (b) in tune (Dover Wilson).
Pist. Be merciful, great duke, to men of mould!  
Abate thy rage, abate thy manly rage;  
Abate thy rage, great duke!

Good bawcock, bate thy rage; use lenity, sweet chuck!

Nym. These be good humours! your honour wins bad humours.  
[Exeunt all but Boy.

Boy. As young as I am, I have observed these three swashers. I am boy to them all three, but all they three, though they would serve me, could not be man to me; for indeed three such antics do not amount to a man. For Bardolph, he is white-livered and red-faced; by the means whereof a' faces it out, but fights not. For Pistol, he hath a killing tongue and a quiet sword; by the means whereof a' breaks words, and keeps whole weapons. For Nym, he hath heard that men of few words are the best men; and therefore he scorns to say his prayers, lest a'

22-5. Pope's arrangement. Prose F.  
27. Exeunt . . . Boy] added Camb.; Exit F.  
31. antics] Camb.; Antiques F.

22. men of mould] men of earth, mere mortals. Dyce quotes from the ballad True Thomas, Jamieson's Popular Ballads, II. 16, "Man of Molde, thou wilt me marre".


25. bawcock] fine fellow (Fr. beau coq).

26. These . . . humours] Nym is ironical.

28-57. Note the quibbles and antitheses throughout the Boy's speech.  
29. swashers] swaggerers.

29. I . . . all three] (a) servant to them, (b) boy as compared with them.

31. be . . . me] (a) less of a man than I am, (b) be my servant.

31. antics] freaks, buffoons.

33. white-livered] cowardly, i.e. no blood in his liver. Cf. Tw.N. iii. ii. 69-70, "if he were opened, and you find so much blood in his liver as will clog the foot of a flea . . . .", and Mer.V. iii. ii. 86-7.


35-6. a killing . . . sword] Cf. 2H4 ii. iv. 184 for Pistol's "bitter words", and ii. iv. 105 for Falstaff's description of him as a "tame cheater".

36. breaks words] (a) breaks his word, (b) exchanges words (and not blows). O.E.D. quotes Err. iii. i. 75, "A man may break a word with you, sir, and words are but wind".

38. men of few . . . men] Cf. Eccles. v. i, "therefore let thy words be few"; and Wiv. i. i. 134-5, where Nym pretends to want few words only lest a fight with Slender be delayed, "Slice, I say! paucitate; slice! that's my humour". The saying was, of course, proverbial, usually in the form in which it occurs in LLL. iv. ii. 82-3, "vir sapit qui paucis loquitur".
should be thought a coward: but his few bad words are matched with as few good deeds; for a’ never broke any man’s head but his own, and that was against a post when he was drunk. They will steal any thing and call it purchase. Bardolph stole a lute-case, bore it twelve leagues, and sold it for three half-pence. Nym and Bardolph are sworn brothers in filching, and in Calais they stole a fire-shovel; I knew by that piece of service the men would carry coals. They would have me as familiar with men’s pockets as their gloves or their handkerchers: which makes much against my manhood if I should take from another’s pocket to put into mine; for it is plain pocketing up of wrongs. I must leave them and seek some better service: their villany goes against my weak stomach, and therefore I must cast it up.

[Exit.

Re-enter Fluellen, Gower following.

Gow. Captain Fluellen, you must come presently to the mines; the Duke of Gloucester would speak with you.

Flu. To the mines! tell you the duke it is not so good to come to the mines. For look you, the mines is

40-45. [few bad...good deeds] The old saying, “Deeds not words”, is not true of Nym even though he believes in brevity of speech.

45. [purchase] euphemism for “swag”, stolen goods.

47. [sworn brothers] Cf. II. i. 12.

47. [Calais] “How Nym and Bard. had come from Calais, towards which they would soon be marching we are not told. Perhaps Sh.’s inadvertence” (Dover Wilson). Brooks links this error with the “Dover” error in 3 Chorus 4.

49. [service] Ironical.

49. [carry coals] (a) do degrading service, (b) show cowardice. Cf. Rom. i. i. 1.

54. [pocketing...wrongs] (a) putting up with insults, (b) receiving stolen goods.

56. [against...stomach] (a) against my inclination, (b) makes me ill.

57. [cast it up] (a) throw up their service, (b) be sick.

S.D. See Introduction, p. xli.

58-68. According to Holinshed, III. 550 the “countermining somewhat disappointed the Englishmen”.

57. Re-enter...following] Steevens;
not according to the disciplines of the war; the
concavities of it is not sufficient; for, look you, th’
athversey, you may discuss unto the duke, look
you, is digt himself four yard under the counter-
mines. By Cheshu, I think a’ will plow up all
if there is not better directions.

Gow. The Duke of Gloucester, to whom the order of
the siege is given, is altogether directed by an
Irishman, a very valiant gentleman, i’ faith.

Flu. It is Captain Macmorris, is it not?

Gow. I think it be.

Flu. By Cheshu, he is an ass, as in the world: I will
verify as much in his beard: he has no more
directions in the true disciplines of the wars, look
you, of the Roman disciplines, than is a puppy-dog.

Enter Captain Macmorris and Captain Jamy.

Gow. Here a’ comes; and the Scots captain, Captain
Jamy, with him.

Flu. Captain Jamy is a marvellous falorous gentleman,
that is certain; and of great expedition and
knowledge in th’ aunchiant wars, upon my par-
ticular knowledge of his directions: by Cheshu,

72. Flu.] Rowe; Welch F (and so to the end of the scene).
77. Enter . . . Jamy] Camb.; enter Makmorrice, and Captaine Jamy F.

63. disciplines of war] conventions and practice of warfare. See note to l. 77.
65. discuss] inform.
66-7. is digt . . . countermines] “has digged himself countermines four yards under the mines” (Johnson).
67. plow] blow. For Fluellen’s “p’s” and “b’s” see Introduction, p. xlii.
74-5. I will . . . beard] I will prove it to his face.
77. Roman disciplines] Military tactics were the subject of vigorous con-
troversy in the closing years of the century. See Introduction, p. xxxiii.
Fluellen sides with those who be-
lieved that the introduction of gun-
powder had made no essential difference to military practice. Cf.
Digges, Foure Paradoxes, 1604, p. 41: “I therefore to the contrarie averre:
That neither the furie of Ordinance . . . hath or can worke any such
alteration: But that the auncient
discipline of the Romane and Martiall
Grecian States (even for our time)
are rare and singular Precedents.”
81. expedition] readiness, having a
ready knowledge of (a rhetorical
term).
82. aunchiant] Possibly a Shake-
spearian spelling though it might be
an indication of Fluellen’s pronunciation.
he will maintain his argument as well as any military man in the world, in the disciplines of the pristine wars of the Romans.

Jamy. I say gud day, Captain Fluellen.

Flu. God-den to your worship, good Captain James.

Gow. How now, Captain Macmorris! have you quit the mines? have the pioners given o’er?

Mac. ByC hrish, la! tish ill done: the work ish give over, the trompet sound the retreat. By my hand, I swear, and my father’s soul, the work ish ill done; it ish give over: I would have blowed up the town, so Chrish save me, la! in an hour: O, tish ill done, tish ill done; by my hand, tish ill done!

Flu. Captain Macmorris, I beseech you now, will you voutsafe me, look you, a few disputations with you as partly touching or concerning the disciplines of the war, the Roman wars, in the way of argument, look you, and friendly communication; partly to satisfy my opinion, and partly for the satisfaction, look you, of my mind, as touching the direction of the military discipline: that is the point.

Jamy. It sall be vary gud, gud feith, gud captains bath: and I sall quit you with gud leve, as I may pick occasion; that sall I, marry.

Mac. It is no time to discourse, so Chrish save me: the day is hot, and the weather, and the wars, and the king, and the dukes: it is no time to discourse. The town is besieged, and the trumpet call us to the breach; and we talk, and, be Chrish, do nothing: 'tis shame for us all; so God sa’ me, 'tis shame to stand still; it is shame, by my hand; and there is throats to be cut, and works to be done; and there ish nothing done, so Chrish sa’ me, la!

87. Jamy] Rowe; Scot F (and so to the end of the scene). 91. Mac.] Rowe; Irish F (and so to the end of the scene). 91, 95, 116. la] Capell; law F.

90. pioners] pioners; i.e. sappers, miners.

101. communication] A rhetorical figure in which either the opposing speaker or the judges were taken into consultation. See Quintilian, Institutiones, 1580, p. 499, hence the aptness of the epithet “friendly”.

106. quit] requisite, answer.

111. beseeched] besieged.
Jamy. By the mess, ere theise eyes of mine take themselves to slomber ay'll de gud service, or I'll lig i' th' grund for it; ay, or go to death; and I'll pay 't as valorously as I may, that sall I suerly 120 do, that is the breff and the long. Marry, I wad full fain hear some question 'tween you tway.

Flu. Captain Macmorris, I think, look you, under your correction, there is not many of your nation—

Mac. Of my nation! What is my nation? Ish a 125 villain, and a bastard, and a knave, and a rascal—What is my nation? Who talks of my nation?

Flu. Look you, if you take the matter otherwise than is meant, Captain Macmorris, peradventure I shall think you do not use me with that affability as in 130 discretion you ought to use me, look you; being as good a man as yourself, both in the disciplines of war, and in the derivation of my birth, and in other particularies.

Mac. I do not know you so good a man as myself: 135 so Chrish save me, I will cut off your head.

Gow. Gentlemen both, you will mistake each other.

Jamy. A! that's a foul fault. [A parley sounded.

Gow. The town sounds a parley.

Flu. Captain Macmorris, when there is more better 140 opportunity to be required, look you, I will be so bold as to tell you I know the disciplines of war; and there is an end. [Exeunt.


122. hear] The F "heard" is probably an "e": "d" misreading of "heare".

125. Of my nation!] Macmorris is enraged the moment Fluellen appears to be about to criticize his nation: "What are you going to say agin my country now? I suppose you'll be after calling me a villain and a bastard?" (Craig quoted Evans). Strict martial laws were enforced to prevent quarrelling of this kind. Cf. Garrard, Art of Warre, p. 40, Law 30, "there shall no souldiers or other men, procure or stir up any quarrell with any stranger, that is of any other nation and such as serue under one head and Lord with them”.

137. you will mistake] you persist in mistaking.

141. to be required] presents itself.
SCENE III.—The Same.

Some Citizens on the walls above the gates. Enter King Henry and all his Train before the gates.

K. Hen. How yet resolves the governor of the town?
This is the latest parle we will admit:
Therefore to our best mercy give yourselves;
Or like to men proud of destruction
Defy us to our worst: for, as I am a soldier,
A name that in my thoughts becomes me best,
If I begin the battery once again,
I will not leave the half-achieved Harfleur
Till in her ashes she lie buried.
The gates of mercy shall be all shut up,

Scene iii

The same . . . gates] Ed.; The Same. Before the Gates. The Governor and some Citizens on the walls; the English Forces below. Enter King Henry and his Train Camb.; Enter the King and all his Train before the Gates F.

1-43. A description of the horrors accompanying the sacking of a city was a frequent theme of contemporary writers. Such sackings did occur in Shakespeare's time in the Netherlands, and he may have had in mind such an appalling affair as the sack of Bovaigne (see Barwick, A Breve Discourse, 1594, pp. 9-10).

Henry's conduct of the siege is in accordance with military law. As Gentili explains (De Iure Belli, 1612, ed. Rolfe, II. 216-30) there is a point of time in a siege after which no surrender is possible, and whether the defenders lay down their arms or not makes no difference, the city falls by assault and is sacked (e.g. "if bombardes are brought up to weak places, no room seems to be left for surrender"). Henry announces to the Governor that this point of time has now been reached. An interesting contemporary parallel was Stanley's surrender of Deventer to the Spaniards in 1587 strictly in accordance with the law, a surrender that aroused considerable controversy.

Deut. xx. may be the source of this law, but Dover Wilson's claims that Henry's speech is "merely an elaboration of Deut. xx. 10-14" and the whole incident "clearly based on Gesta" which at this point asserts Henry's compliance with the law of Deuteronomy, are both unconvincing. Shakespeare could have found the reference to Deut. xx on the previous page of Hall, in a letter written to Charles by Henry at Southampton, or for that matter frequently in writers on military discipline.

4. proud of destruction] glorying in their deaths.

gates of mercy] The phrase is not in the Bible. Its familiarity may be due to Gray's Elegy, l. 68. Cf. 3H6 i. iv. 177, "Open thy gate of mercy, gracious God!"
And the flesh'd soldier, rough and hard of heart,
In liberty of bloody hand shall range
With conscience wide as hell, mowing like grass
Your fresh-fair virgins and your flowering infants.
What is it then to me, if impious war,
Array'd in flames like to the prince of fiends,
Do, with his smirch'd complexion, all fell feats
Enlink'd to waste and desolation?
What is't to me, when you yourselves are cause,
If your pure maidens fall into the hand
Of hot and forcing violation?
What rein can hold licentious wickedness
When down the hill he holds his fierce career?
We may as bootless spend our vain command
Upon th' enraged soldiers in their spoil
As send precepts to the leviathan
To come ashore. Therefore, you men of Harfleur,
Take pity of your town and of your people,
Whiles yet my soldiers are in my command;
Whiles yet the cool and temperate wind of grace
O'erblows the filthy and contagious clouds
Of heady murder, spoil, and villainy.
If not, why, in a moment look to see
The blind and bloody soldier with foul hand

26. F divides after ashore.

11. flesh'd] trained or initiated in slaughter. Cf. ii. iv. 50.
11-13. the flesh'd soldier ... hell] the soldier injured to blood ... with a free hand to indulge in slaughter, shall be turned loose with a conscience stretched wide enough to sanction hellish deeds.
15. impious war] "bellum impium" in Latin writers means "civil war". Cf. Georgics Bk. I. 511. Henry asserts that they are disloyally fighting against their lawful sovereign (see l. 43), and therefore he has no responsibility for the ills that befall them.
15-18. What ... desolation] what is it to me then, if the evils of civil war which you have brought about,

32. heady] F 3; heady F 1; headdy F 2.

32. heady] F reading "headly" has some support from Wyclif who uses "hedly" in the sense of "deadly" (O.E.D.) Brooks, however, suggests that Wyclif's "hedly" means "capital".

34. blind] reckless, heedless.
Defile the locks of your shrill-shrieking daughters; 35
Your fathers taken by the silver beards,
And their most reverend heads dash'd to the walls;
Your naked infants spitted upon pikes,
While the mad mothers with their howls confus'd
Do break the clouds, as did the wives of Jewry 40
At Herod's bloody-hunting slaughtermen.
What say you? will you yield, and this avoid?
Or, guilty in defence, be thus destroy'd?

Enter Governor and Attendants.

Gov. Our expectation hath this day an end.
The Dauphin, whom of succours we entreated, 45
Returns us that his powers are yet not ready
To raise so great a siege. Therefore, great king,
We yield our town and lives to thy soft mercy.
Enter our gates; dispose of us and ours;
For we no longer are defensible.

K. Hen. Open your gates! Come, uncle Exeter,
Go you and enter Harfleur; there remain,
And fortify it strongly 'gainst the French:
Use mercy to them all. For us, dear uncle,

35. Defile] Rowe (ed. 3); Desire F. 43. Enter . . . Attendants] Ed.;
Enter Governor F. 54. all. For] Pope; all for F.

40-1. wives . . . slaughtermen] See Matt. ii. 16-18, "In Rama was there a voice heard, lamentation, and weeping and great mourning, Rachel weeping for her children, and would not be comforted, because they are not."

43. guilty in defence] (a) to blame for holding out (see note to ll. 1-43), (b) disloyal in withholding the town from its rightful king.

43. Enter . . . Attendants] Editors have omitted the F stage direction. What happens is surely that the Governor comes through the wicket accompanied by a few attendants and, offering the keys of the town to Henry, makes his submission. There is no need for the Governor to be on the walls in person, though he could of course move down during Henry's speech.


50. defensible] capable of offering defence.

52-3. Exeter placed Sir John Fastolf in charge. On the muster roll of 14 June 1428 at Honfleur where Sir John Fastolf was in charge appears the name of Johan Bardolf, a mounted man-at-arms (M.L.N. XLVIII, 1933, pp. 436-7).

54. Use mercy] Not according to Holinshed.
SCENE IV.—Rouen. A Room in the Palace.

Enter Princess Katharine and Alice, an old Gentlewoman.

Kath. Alice, tu as été en Angleterre, et tu parles bien le langage.

Alice. Un peu, madame.

Kath. Je te prie, m'enseignez; il faut que j'apprenne à parler. Comment appellez-vous la main en Anglais?

58. Flourish . . . town] Camb.; Flourish and enter the Towne F.

Scene iv


55-6. sickness ... Calais] Apparently dysentery and fevers. So Hall and Holinshed.

58. address] ready, prepared.

Scene iv

Some editors consider that Shakespeare did not write this scene, but their arguments are singularly unconvincing.

The French of F has been corrected and modernized by various editors. Dover Wilson notes: "If we allow for Sh.'s handwriting, for the F compositor's ignorance of Fr., for phonetic spellings to help the boy players, and for the occurrence of early mod. Fr. forms, it is doubtful whether there was orig. very much wrong with Sh.'s Fr. except the genders."

A selection of F readings is given by way of illustration.

M. L. Radoff, "Influence of French Farce in Henry V and the Merry Wives", M.L.N. XLVIII, 1933, pp. 427-35, suggests that Shakespeare is here indebted to French farces because no other Elizabethan play makes use of a language lesson, because the patterns are the same, and because this lesson and three French farces in particular end with the same obscene word. Language lessons of a kind, however, do occur in other plays, notably Wager's The Longer Thou Livest and Redford's Wit and Science, otherwise Radoff's third parallel is sufficiently striking to carry weight.
Alice. La main? elle est appelée de hand.
Kath. De hand. Et les doigts?
Alice. Les doigts? ma foi, j’oublie les doigts, mais je me souviendrai. Les doigts? je pense qu’ils sont appelés de fingres; oui, de fingres.
Kath. La main, de hand; les doigts, de fingres. Je pense que je suis le bon écolier. J’ai gagné deux mots d’Anglais vitement. Comment appellez-vous les ongles?
Alice. Les ongles? nous les appelons de nails.
Kath. De nails. Ecoutez; dites moi si je parle bien: de hand, de fingres, et de nails.
Alice. C’est bien dit, madame; il est fort bon Anglais.
Kath. Dites moi l’Anglais pour le bras.
Alice. De arm, madame.
Kath. Et le coude?.
Alice. D’ elbow.
Kath. D’ elbow. Je m’en fais la répétition de tous les mots que vous m’avez appris dés à présent.
Alice. Il est trop difficile, madame, comme je pense.
Kath. Excusez-moi, Alice; écoutez: d’ hand, de fingres, de nails, de arma, de bilbow.
Alice. D’ elbow, madame.
Kath. O Seigneur Dieu! je m’en oublie; d’ elbow. Comment appellez-vous le col?
Alice. De nick, madame.
Kath. De nick. Et le menton?
Alice. De chin.
Kath. De sin. Le col, de nick; le menton, de sin.
Alice. Oui. Sauf votre honneur, en vérité, vous prononcez les mots aussi droit que les natifs d’Angleterre.

9-13. Theobald’s rearrangement. F assigns Et les doigts to Alice, ll. 9-11 to Katharine and La main... écolier to Alice. 10. souviendrai] souumeray F. 16. nous] added Camb. nails] Nayles F.

16. nails] Duthie suggests that the spelling “Nayles” denotes a disyllabic pronunciation. Cf. fetters, was intended. 29. de bilbow] A bilbo was a sword, but perhaps a glance at “bilboes”
Kath. Je ne doute point d'apprendre par la grace de Dieu, et en peu de temps.

Alice. N'avez vous pas déjà oublié ce que je vous ai enseigné?

Kath. Non, je reciterai à vous promptement. D'hand, de fingre, de mails,—

Alice. De nails, madame.

Kath. De nails, de arm, de ilbow.

Alice. Sauf votre honneur, d'elbow.

Kath. Ainsi dis-je; d'elbow, de nick, et de sin. Comment appellez-vous le pied et la robe?

Alice. Le foot, madame; et le count.

Kath. Le foot, et le count? O Seigneur Dieu! ils sont les mots de son mauvais, corruptible, gros, et impudique, et non pour les dames d'honneur d'user. Je ne voudrais prononcer ces mots devant les seigneurs de France, pour tout le monde. Foh! le foot et le count! Néanmoins je reciterai une autre fois ma leçon ensemble: d'hand, de fingre, de nails, d'arm, d'elbow, de nick, de sin, de foot, le count.

Alice. Excellent, madame!

Kath. C'est assez pour une fois: allons nous à dîner.

[Exeunt.]
SCENE V.—The Same.

Enter the King of France, the Dauphin, the Duke of Bretagne, the Constable of France, and others.

Fr. King. 'Tis certain he hath pass'd the river Somme.
Con. And if he be not fought withal, my lord,
Let us not live in France; let us quit all,
And give our vineyards to a barbarous people.

Dau. O Dieu vivant! shall a few sprays of us,
The emptying of our fathers’ luxury,
Our scions, put in wild and savage stock,
Spirit up so suddenly into the clouds,
And overlook their grafters?

Bret. Normans, but bastard Normans, Norman bastards! 10
Mort Dieu! ma vie! if they march along
Unfought withal, but I will sell my dukedom,
To buy a slobbery and a dirty farm
In that nook-shot ten isle of Albion.

Scene v

Enter . . . others] Dover Wilson; Enter the King of France, the
Dover Wilson; Bour. Theobald, Camb. 11. Dieu!] Dover Wilson after
Greg; du F 1; de F 2, Camb.

Scene v

Most editors substitute Q “Bourbon” for F “Britain” in the entry
notice, in the speech headings of ll. 10, 32, and in the entry notice to ll. iv. The characters in Q, however, have been greatly reduced to
fit a smaller cast, and Bourbon takes
a much larger part including that of
the Dauphin in m. vii. He is not
mentioned by Hall or Holinshed at
this point, while both Berri and
“Britain” are.

1. pass’d . . . Somme] on his retreat
to Calais. See iii. iii. 56.
5. sprays] offshoots, bastards.
6. emptying . . . luxury] outpouring
or dregs of our ancestors’ lust.
7. scions] shoots (for grafting).
7. savage] uncultivated, wild.
7. stock] the rooted stem of a tree,
usually of a wild tree, into which a
shoot is grafted. Cf. Wint. iv. iii.
92-3,
“You see, sweet maid, we marry
A gentler scion to the wildest stock”.
7. Our scions . . . stock] The offspring
of intermarriage between Normans
and Saxons.
8. spirit] sprout, shoot up.
9. grafters] original trees from
which the scion was taken.
11. vie] Two syllables.
12. but] if . . . not. The word is
dependent on the oath “Mort
Dieu! ma vie!” If I do not sell, etc.
14. nook-shot ten] running into cor-
ers, indented. Here used con-
temptuously.
Con. Dieu de batailles! where have they this mettle? 15
Is not their climate foggy, raw and dull,
On whom, as in despite, the sun looks pale,
Killing their fruit with frowns? Can sodden water
A drench for sur-rein’d jades, their barley broth,
Decoct their cold blood to such valiant heat?
And shall our quick blood, spirited with wine,
Seem frosty? O, for honour of our land,
Let us not hang like roping icicles
Upon our houses’ thatch, whiles a more frosty people
Sweat drops of gallant youth in our rich fields!— 25
Poor we may call them in their native lords.

Dau. By faith and honour,
Our madams mock at us, and plainly say
Our mettle is bred out; and they will give
Their bodies to the lust of English youth
To new-store France with bastard warriors.

Bret. They bid us to the English dancing-schools,
And teach lavotas high and swift corantos;

26. may] added F 2.
Bour. Theobald.

18. sodden] boiled.
19. drench] a medicinal draught
given to horses. Cf. Pliny, Nat.
Hist. (tr. Holland), 1601, II. 144,
"Pourre this drench with an horne
downe the throat of labouring jades ".
19. sur-rein’d] over-ridden.
19. barley broth] i.e. ale. English
farriers used ale for horse drenches
whereas those on the Continent used
wine. Cf. Pliny’s remedies with
those of Markham, Maister-Peace,
1615, p. 39, etc.
20. Decoct] warm, or perhaps
infuse.
21. spirited with wine] The Con-
stable assumes that wine is essential to
both courage and culture. Cf. l. 4.
23. roping] concealing, lit. capable
of being drawn out into a thread.
Cf. Ovid, Metamorphoses, tr. Golding,
1565, I. 2b, "Then isycles hung
roping down ", and rv. ii. 48.

25-6. rich ... lords] rich fields!—
rather should we call them poor
because they have bred such poor
spirited masters. Cf. iii. i. 25-7 and
l. 29 below, " mettle is bred out ".
29. bred out] degenerate, exhausted.
Cf. Tim. i. i. 259-6,
"The strain of man’s bred out
Into baboon and monkey ".
32. They ... dancing schools] They
bid us become mere dancing-masters
to the English.
33. lavotas high] The lavolta was
a dance in three-four time consisting
of a body turn in two steps followed
by a high leap. It seems to have
originated in Italy as the name
"volta ", a leap or whirl, implies.
Cf. Troil. rv. iv. 85-6,
"I cannot sing
Nor heel the high lavolt ".
33. swift corantos] The coranto was
a dance in two-four time something
Saying our grace is only in our heels,
And that we are most lofty runaways.

Fr. King. Where is Montjoy the herald? speed him hence:
Let him greet England with our sharp defiance.
Up, princes! and, with spirit of honour edg’d
More sharper than your swords, hie to the field:
Charles Delabreth, high constable of France;
You Dukes of Orleans, Bourbon, and of Berri,
Alençon, Brabant, Bar, and Burgundy;
Jaques Chatillon, Rambures, Vaudemont,
Beaumont, Grandpré, Roussi, and Faulconbridge,
Foix, Lestrale, Bouciqualt, and Charolais;
High dukes, great princes, barons, lords, and knights,
For your great seats now quit you of great shames,
Bar Harry England, that sweeps through our land
With pennons painted in the blood of Harfleur:
Rush on his host, as doth the melted snow
Upon the valleys, whose low vassal seat
The Alps doth spit and void his rheum upon:
Go down upon him, you have power enough,

like the Victorian Gallop. Its distinguishing feature was its running
step similar to that used in country
dances.

34. grace] ? saving grace.
34. in our heels] (a) in taking to our heels, (b) in dancing.
35. lofty runaways] accomplished cowards. The phrase neatly sum-
marizes the essential character of
each dancer.
40-5. These names, with the ex-
ception of Charolais and Berri, are
taken from Holinshed’s list of those
slain or taken prisoner at Agincourt.
44. Faulconbridge] Although Holin-
shed has “Fauconberg” in this list,
he uses the form “Fauconbridge” on
the previous page (Dover Wilson).

43. Vaudemont] F 2; Vandemont F 1.
45. Foix] Capell; Leys F.
44. Faulconbridge] F; Fauconberg
Capell.
45. Lestrale] F, Camb.; Lestrale
Charaloes F.
46. knights] Pope (ed. 2) from Theobald’s conjecture;
Kings F.

45. Foix] Capell’s reading after
Holinshed’s “Fois”.
45. Lestrale] Holinshed has “Les-
trake”.
47. For . . . seats] for the sake of
the great positions you occupy.
52. The Alps . . . upon] Shakespeare
probably owes this image to Quin-
tillian’s condemnation of Furius’ line,
“Juppiter hybernas cana niue con-
spuit Alpes” as harsh and strained.
Horace also, as Steevens noted,
ridicules the line (Satires, ii. 5, 41).
Shakespeare who adapts the figure
in his own way, with full knowledge
of its rhetorical significance, puts this
far-fetched and vicious metaphor into
the mouth of the grandiloquent
French king (Baldwin, II. 212-13).
And in a captive chariot into Rouen
Bring him our prisoner.

Con. This becomes the great.

Sorry am I his numbers are so few,
His soldiers sick and famish'd in their march,
For I am sure when he shall see our army
He'll drop his heart into the sink of fear,
And for achievement offer us his ransom.

Fr. King. Therefore, lord constable, haste on Montjoy,
And let him say to England that we send
To know what willing ransom he will give.
Prince Dauphin, you shall stay with us in Rouen.

Dau. Not so, I do beseech your majesty.

Fr. King. Be patient, for you shall remain with us.
Now forth, lord constable and princes all,
And quickly bring us word of England's fall.

[Exeunt.

SCENE VI.—The English Camp in Picardy.

Enter the English and Welsh Captains, Gower and Fluellen.

Gow. How now, Captain Fluellen! come you from the bridge?

Flu. I assure you there is very excellent services committed at the bridge.

54, 64. Rouen] Malone; Roan F.

Scene vi

The ... Picardy] added Malone.
Enter ... Fluellen] Ed.; Enter Captaines, English and Welch, Gower and Fluellen F.

54. captive chariot] Drawn from Holinshed.

56. See note to iv. ii. 16-24.

59. sink] pit.

60. for achievement] (a) to conclude the business, (b) instead of an honourable encounter.

64. Prince ... Rouen] This is in accordance with Hall and Holinshed.

Scene vi

a. the bridge] Henry sent a detachment ahead of his main forces to seize the bridge over the Ternoise at Blangy. After a skirmish with French forces guarding the bridge, the Englishmen captured the bridge on 23 October, and Henry's main forces crossed over on 24 October, the night before Agincourt.

3. services] deeds of arms, exploits.
Gow. Is the Duke of Exeter safe?

Flu. The Duke of Exeter is as magnanimous as Agamemnon; and a man that I love and honour with my soul, and my heart, and my duty, and my life, and my living, and my uttermost power: he is not,—God be praised and blessed!—any hurt in the world, but keeps the bridge most valiantly, with excellent discipline. There is an aunchient lieutenant there at the pridge; I think in my very conscience he is as valiant a man as Mark Antony; and he is a man of no estimation in the world; but I did see him do as gallant service.

Gow. What do you call him?

Flu. He is called Aunchient Pistol.

Gow. I know him not.

Enter Pistol.

Flu. Here is the man.

Pist. Captain, I thee beseech to do me favours:

   The Duke of Exeter doth love thee well.

Flu. Ay, I praise God; and I have merited some love at his hands.

Pist. Bardolph, a soldier firm and sound of heart,
   And of buxom valour, hath, by cruel fate
   And giddy Fortune's furious fickle wheel,

9. life] Q., Rowe; live F.  

Prose F.  

5. Exeter] According to Hall and Holinshed Exeter was not present at the capture of the bridge.

9. life] The F "live" is probably an anticipation of "living".

13. aunchient lieutenant] possibly sub-lieutenant or first lieutenant.

14-16. This is not consistent with Pistol's character elsewhere. Perhaps the French, like their compatriot M. le Fer later on, were overawed by Pistol's "killing tongue".

15. Mark Antony] "the garland of the war . . . the soldier's pole" of Ant. iv. xv. 64-5.

26. buxom] brisk, sturdy.

27-39. For a detailed discussion of the medieval and renaissance treatment of the Roman goddess Fortuna see H. R. Patch, *The Goddess Fortuna in Mediaeval Literature*, 1927. Fortune was the common theme of medieval and renaissance poets, artists and emblem writers. The painter in Tim. claims to show "A thousand moral paintings . . . That shall demonstrate these quick blows of Fortune's". It is not clear that Fluellen had any particular painter or poet in mind, although Greene, *Farewell to Folly* (Works, ed. Grosart, IX. 264), refers specifically to a
That goddess blind,
That stands upon the rolling restless stone—

Flu. By your patience, Aunchient Pistol. Fortune is painted blind, with a muffler afores her eyes, to signify to you that Fortune is blind: and she is painted also with a wheel, to signify to you, which is the moral of it, that she is turning, and inconstant, and mutability, and variation: and her foot, look you, is fixed upon a spherical stone, which rolls, and rolls, and rolls: in good truth, the poet makes a most excellent description of it: Fortune is an excellent moral.

Pist. Fortune is Bardolph's foe, and frowns on him; For he hath stol'n a pax, and hanged must a' be.


painting by Zeuxes. Baldwin, II. 73-6, however, urges that Fluellen's description is a parallel parody of some lines of Pacuvius which are quoted in Ad Herennium as an illustration of faulty reasoning. Moreover, he claims that Shakespeare was using the particular version of these lines contained in Laminus' Ciceronis Opera Omnia, 1573, I. 37: "Fortunam insanam esse & caecam & brutam perhibent philosophi, Saxoque illam instare globoso praedicant volubili." Ideo, quo saxu impulerit fors, cadere eo fortuna autumat. Caecam ob eam rem esse iterant, quia nihil cernat, quo se se applicet. Insanam autem aiunt, quia atrox, incerta, instabilisq; sit. Brutam, quia dignu, atq; indignum nequeat internoscere." He adds that the "learned grammarians" in the audience should have recognized his stock illustration of faulty reasoning, and perhaps should have remembered its sequel in which the existence of Fortune is denied and men's misfortunes are attributed to their own rashness. In other words Bardolph had only his own rashness to blame for his misfortune—an excellent moral indeed! 27. furious] cruel.

40. Fortune ... foe] Usually taken to refer to the ballad, "Fortune, my foe! why dost thou frown on me?" The phrase may have been proverbial long before. Cf. Chaucer, Troyl. I. 837, "Wel fynde I that Fortune is my fo". Pistol implies that Fortune punishes sacrilege, an interesting function for a pagan goddess.

41. he ... a' be] Holinshed narrates the theft of a pyx, not a pax, and its punishment. See Appendix, p. 162. Henry had previously issued orders on this matter: "If Any ... of our hooste presume to take Awaye frome Any churche... Any of theyr goodes, that ys to saye vestments, chalices, bookes, Iuwells, or Any Relyques ... they be forthwyth hangyd therothere ... no man vnder payne o dethe be so bolde As to touche onreuerently the sacrament of the Auter, or the pyxe, or Any other boxe wherein yt ys conteynyd" (Upton, De Studio Militari, tr. Blount, ed. Dudden, p. 34).
A damned death!
Let gallows gape for dog, let man go free,
And let not hemp his wind-pipe suffocate.
But Exeter hath given the doom of death
For pax of little price.
Therefore, go speak; the duke will hear thy voice;
And let not Bardolph's vital thread be cut
With edge of penny cord and vile reproach:
Speak, captain, for his life, and I will thee requite.

Flu. Aunchient Pistol, I do partly understand your meaning.

Pist. Why then, rejoice therefore.

Flu. Certainly, aunchient, it is not a thing to rejoice at; for if, look you, he were my brother, I would desire the duke to use his good pleasure and put him to execution; for discipline ought to be used.

Pist. Die and be damn'd; and figo for thy friendship!

Flu. It is well.

Pist. The fig of Spain!

Flu. Very good.

Gow. Why, this is an arrant counterfeit rascal: I remember him now; a bawd, a cut-purse.

Flu. I'll assure you a' uttered as prave words at the pridge as you shall see in a summer's day. But

As Dover Wilson notes "the agreement of F and Q ("'packs'") proves that 'pax' was spoken on the stage".

The pyx is the box in which the consecrated wafers are kept; the pax is a small metal plate with a crucifix impressed on it. In the celebration of mass in the early Christian Church a kiss of peace was given to the communicants by the priest. In the thirteenth century a metal plate or tablet was kissed by the priest instead and then passed to the congregation to kiss in turn. Shakespeare, who surely must have known the difference, may have substituted "pax" for some reason not now clear.

45. doom] judgement.

46. of little price] Dover Wilson sees in this a direct link with the Gesta, p. 41, "puxidam de cupro deaurato, quam forte credebat auream... rapuisset". The excuse, however, is a natural one under the circumstances.

53. Why... therefore]. Cf. 2H4 v. iii. 110, Pistol, "Why then, lament therefore".

58, 60. figo], fig of Spain] An expression of contempt accompanied by a coarse gesture in which the thumb was thrust between the fingers or into the mouth. "Fig of Spain" seems to have been more emphatic than "figo".

it is very well; what he has spoke to me, that is well, I warrant you, when time is serve.

_Gow._ Why, 'tis a gull, a fool, a rogue, that now and then goes to the wars to grace himself at his return into London under the form of a soldier. And such fellows are perfect in the great commanders' names, and they will learn you by rote where services were done; at such and such a sconce, at such a breach, at such a convoy; who came off bravely, who was shot, who disgraced, what terms the enemy stood on; and this they can perfectly in the phrase of war, which they trick up with new-tuned oaths: and what a beard of the general's cut and a horrid suit of the camp will do among foaming bottles and ale-washed wits, is wonderful to be thought on. But you must learn to know such slanders of the age, or else you may be marvellously mistook.

_Flu._ I tell you what, Captain Gower; I do perceive he is not the man that he would gladly make show to the world he is: if I find a hole in his coat I will tell him my mind. [Drum heard.]

Hark you, the king is coming, and I must speak with him from the pridge.

_Drum and Colours. Enter King Henry, Gloucester, and his poor soldiers._

_Flu._ God pless your majesty!

---

87. Drum heard] added Capell. 89. Enter . . . soldiers] Dover Wilson. Enter the King and his poore Souldiers F.

68. _gull_ stupid fellow.
72-3. _services_ Cf. i. 3.
73. _sconce_ fort, earthwork.
74. _came off_] acquitted himself.
75-6. _what terms . . . stood on_] what was the condition of the enemy.
77-8. _phrase of war . . . new-tuned oaths_ Cf. _Oth._ i. 1, i. 14, "Horribly stuff'd with epithets of war".
78. _new-tuned_ newly coined.
78-9. _beard . . . cut_. Trimmed to the same fashion as that favoured by the General.
79. _horrid . . . camp_ fearsome battle-dress.
82. _slanders of the age_ those who bring shame on their times.
86. _find . . . coat_ have the chance to expose him.
K. Hen. How now, Fluellen! cam’st thou from the bridge?

Flu. Ay, so please your majesty. The Duke of Exeter has very gallantly maintained the pridge: the French is gone off, look you, and there is gallant and most prave passages. Marry, th’ athversary was have possession of the pridge, but he is enforced to retire, and the Duke of Exeter is master of the pridge. I can tell your majesty the duke is a prave man.

K. Hen. What men have you lost, Fluellen?

Flu. The perdition of th’ athversary hath been very great, reasonable great: marry, for my part, I think the duke hath lost never a man but one that is like to be executed for robbing a church; one Bardolph, if your majesty know the man: his face is all bubukles, and whelks, and knobs, and flames o’ fire; and his lips blows at his nose, and it is like a coal of fire, sometimes plue and sometimes red; but his nose is executed, and his fire’s out.

K. Hen. We would have all such offenders so cut off: and we give express charge that in our marches through the country there be nothing compelled from the villages, nothing taken but paid for, none of the French upbraided or abused in disdainful language; for when lenity and cruelty play for a kingdom, the gentler gamester is the soonest winner.

107. o’] Dyce; a F. 116. lenity] Q, Rowe; Leuitia F.

95. passages] i.e. of arms.

106. bubukles] A confusion of Latin “bubo”, an abscess, with carbuncle in its M.E. form “charbucle”.

whelks] pimpls. Craig (quoted Evans) suggests that Shakespeare may have had Chaucer’s Somnour in mind with his “fyr-reed cherubinnes face”, and his “whelkes whyte”. Cf. Prologue to Canterbury Tales, II. 624-33.

109. executed] “slit as he stood in the pillory, before being hanged” (Dover Wilson).

109. his fire’s] its fire’s.

112-16. we give . . . language] So Hall and Holinshed.

Tucket] a trumpet call.

Montjoy] The title of the chief Herald of France, not his name.
_Tucket._ Enter _Montjoy._

_Mont._ You know me by my habit.

_K. Hen._ Well then I know thee: what shall I know of thee?

_Mont._ My master’s mind.

_K. Hen._ Unfold it.

_Mont._ Thus says my king: Say thou to Harry of England: Though we seemed dead, we did but sleep: advantage is a better soldier than rashness. Tell him we could have rebuked him at Harfleur, but that we thought not good to bruise an injury till it were full ripe: now we speak upon our cue, and our voice is imperial: England shall repent his folly, see his weakness, and admire our sufferance. Bid him therefore consider of his ransom, which must proportion the losses we have borne, the subjects we have lost, the disgrace we have digested; which in weight to re-answer, his pettiness would bow under. For our losses, his exchequer is too poor; for the effusion of our blood, the muster of his kingdom too faint a number; and for our disgrace, his own person, kneeling at our feet, but a weak and worthless satisfaction. To this add defiance: and tell him, for conclusion, he hath betrayed his followers, whose condemnation is pronounced. So far my king and master, so much my office.

_K. Hen._ What is thy name? I know thy quality.

_Mont._ Montjoy.

128. _our cue_ Rowe; _our Q. F._

118. _You...habit_ A particularly insolent greeting.

118. _habit_ i.e. herald’s sleeveless coat (a tabard) bearing his coat-of-arms upon it.

125. _advantage_ a timely seizing of opportunity.

127. _bruise_ crush, squeeze.

127-8. _injury...full ripe_ an image from a boil.

128. _now...cue_ now the time has come for us to speak in this drama.

129. _England_ i.e. Henry.

130. _admire our sufferance_ wonder at our patience.

134-5. _which...under_ to make full reparation for which is beyond his slender means.

144. _Montjoy_ See note to S.D. above.
K. Hen. Thou dost thy office fairly. Turn thee back, 145
And tell thy king I do not seek him now,
But could be willing to march on to Calais
Without impeachment; for, to say the sooth,
Though 'tis no wisdom to confess so much
Unto an enemy of craft and vantage,
My people are with sickness much enfeebled,
My numbers lessen'd, and those few I have
Almost no better than so many French;
Who when they were in health, I tell thee, herald,
I thought upon one pair of English legs 155
Did march three Frenchmen. Yet, forgive me, God,
That I do brag thus! this your air of France
Hath blown that vice in me; I must repent.
Go therefore, tell thy master here I am;
My ransom is this frail and worthless trunk,
My army but a weak and sickly guard;
Yet, God before, tell him we will come on,
Though France himself and such another neighbour
Stand in our way. There's for thy labour, Montjoy.
Go, bid thy master well advise himself: 165
If we may pass, we will; if we be hinder'd,
We shall your tawny ground with your red blood
Discolour: and so, Montjoy, fare you well.
The sum of all our answer is but this:
We would not seek a battle as we are;
Nor, as we are, we say we will not shun it:
So tell your master.

Mont. I shall deliver so. Thanks to your highness. [Exit.

Glou. I hope they will not come upon us now.

K. Hen. We are in God's hand, brother, not in theirs. 175
March to the bridge; it now draws toward night:
Beyond the river we'll encamp ourselves,
And on to-morrow bid them march away. [Exeunt.


146-68. In this speech ii. 146-8, 148. impeachement] hindrance.
162-8 are close to Holinshed. See 150. of craft and vantage] who has
Appendix, p. 162. the advantage of power and initiative.
SCENE VII.—The French Camp, near Agincourt.

Enter the Constable of France, the Lord Rambures, Orleans, Dauphin, with others.

Con. Tut! I have the best armour of the world. Would it were day!
Orl. You have an excellent armour; but let my horse have his due.
Con. It is the best horse of Europe.
Orl. Will it never be morning?
Dau. My lord of Orleans, and my lord high constable, you talk of horse and armour?
Orl. You are as well provided of both as any prince in the world.
Dau. What a long night is this. I will not change my horse with any that treads but on four pasterns. Ça, ha! He bounds from the earth as if his entrails

Scene vii

The... Agincourt] Theobald.
13. Ça, ha!] Theobald; ch' ha F.

Scene vii

Dauphin] The Dauphin’s presence at Agincourt is unhistorical. See iii. v. 64-6.
3. an... armour] a suit of armour.
Cf. 2H4 iv. v. 29, “a rich armour”.
12. pasterns] hoofs. Actually that part of the leg between the fetlock and the hoof.
11-42. I will... nature] The Dauphin himself illustrates how to “vary deserved praise” in composing a “theme”. A “theme” was a term in rhetoric for a literary composition, prose or verse, arranged in strictly observed parts. One of the standard authorities on the writing of themes was Aphonius’ Progymnasmata, 1580, in which (p. 110) is described the type of theme for praising some object. To “vary” a theme was to enlarge it by adding verse quotations, illustrations, allusions, or by the invention of new matter. Here the theme has an obvious relationship to the war horse of Job xxxix. 19-25.
13. Ça ha!] Perhaps a reminiscence of Job xxxix. 25, “He saith among the trumpets, Ha, ha”.
13-14. He bounds... hairs] i.e. as if he were a tennis ball. Tennis balls were stuffed with hair. Cf. ADo, iii. ii. 45-7, “the barber’s man hath been seen with him; and the old ornament of his cheek hath already stuffed tennis-balls”. With this picture of the frivolous Dauphin extolling his palfrey (a lady’s horse) and its parlour tricks, one may contrast Henry, the “feather’d Mercury” of 1H4, who fully armed could leap on to his horse.
were hairs; le cheval volant, the Pegasus, chez les narines de feu! When I bestride him, I soar, I am a hawk: he trots the air; the earth sings when he touches it; the basest horn of his hoof is more musical than the pipe of Hermes.

Orl. He's of the colour of the nutmeg.

Dau. And of the heat of the ginger. It is a beast for Perseus: he is pure air and fire; and the dull elements of earth and water never appear in him, but only in patient stillness while his rider mounts him: he is indeed a horse: and all other jades you may call beasts.

Con. Indeed, my lord, it is a most absolute and excellent horse.

Dau. It is the prince of palfreys; his neigh is like the bidding of a monarch, and his countenance enforces homage.

14. chez] Theobald; ches F; qui a Capell.

14. Pegasus] The winged horse which sprang from the blood of the gorgon Medusa when Perseus cut off her head. According to Ovid, Metam. IV. 662, Perseus was mounted on Pegasus when he rescued Andromeda from the dragon. Earlier stories narrate that Bellerophon alone was the rider of Pegasus. (For a full discussion of this see Baldwin, "Perseus Purloins Pegasus", P.Q. XX, July, 1941) Cf. Troil. i. iii. 42; iv. v. 186.

15. les narines de feu] Cf. Job xxxix. 20, "The glory of his nostrils is terrible ".

16-18. the earth . . . Hermes] Pegasus struck Mt. Helicon with his hoof, and the fountain of the Muses, Hippocrene, sprang forth. In Renaissance story Pegasus was regarded as the horse of the Muses and the symbol of poetry.

18. pipe of Hermes] Probably derived from Ovid, Metam. I. 677, where Hermes charms asleep the monster Argus by the strains of his pipe. Hermes, a Greek god, was identified by the Romans with Mercury.

19, 21. colour of the nutmeg] . . . pure air and fire] Cf. Blundeville, Arte of Ridiynge, I. fol. 1: "A horse for the moste part is coloured according as he is complexioned. . . . Again he is complexioned according as he doth participat more or lesse of any of the iii Elementes . . . If of the aire, then he is a sanguine, and therefore pleasant, nimble, and of colour is most commonlye a baye. And if of the fier, then is he cholorique and therefore lighte, whote, and fiery, a sterer, and seldome of anye great strength, and is wont to be of Colour a bright sorel."

28. prince of palfreys] i.e. the effcminate Dauphin is riding a lady's horse. Cf. Edward III, iv. iv. 90, where the Duke of Normandy (Dauphin) insults the Black Prince by sending him a "nimble Ioynted iennet".
Orl. No more, cousin.

Dau. Nay, the man hath no wit that cannot, from the rising of the lark to the lodging of the lamb, vary deserved praise on my palfrey: it is a theme as fluent as the sea; turn the sands into eloquent tongues, and my horse is argument for them all. 'Tis a subject for a sovereign to reason on; and for a sovereign's sovereign to ride on; and for the world, familiar to us and unknown, to lay apart their particular functions and wonder at him. I once writ a sonnet in his praise and began thus: "Wonder of nature,"

Orl. I have heard a sonnet begin so to one's mistress.

Dau. Then did they imitate that which I composed to my courser; for my horse is my mistress.

Orl. Your mistress bears well.

Dau. Me well; which is the prescript praise and perfection of a good and particular mistress.

Con. Nay, for methought yesterday your mistress shrewdly shook your back.

Dau. So perhaps did yours.

Con. Mine was not bridled.

Dau. O, then belike she was old and gentle, and you rode, like a kern of Ireland, your French hose off, and in your strait strossers.

Con. You have good judgment in horsemanship.

Dau. Be warned by me, then: they that ride so, and

Cf. Breton, Courtier and Countryman II. 6, "We rise with the lark and go to bed with the lamb".

37-8. a sovereign to reason on] A possible quibble on "sovereign reason", a current phrase. Cf. Ham. i. iv. 73, "sovereignty of reason"; iii. i. 166, "that noble and most sovereign reason".

38. reason] discourse.

47. prescript] prescribed, appropriate.

48. particular] having one lover only.

50. shrewdly] severely, cursedly.

52. bridled] as (a) horse, (b) a shrewish woman compelled to wear a bridle, with a glance at "shrewdly" l. 50.

54. kern] light-armed Irish soldiers.


55. strait strossers] tight trousers, i.e. bare-legged.

56. You . . . horsemanship] Ironic.
In view of the Dauphin's reply "horsemanship" is possibly equivocal.
ride not warily, fall into foul bogs. I had rather have my horse to my mistress.

Con. I had as lief have my mistress a jade. 60

Dau. I tell thee, constable, my mistress wears his own hair.

Con. I could make as true a boast as that if I had a sow to my mistress.

Dau. Le chien est retourné à son propre vomissement, et la truie lavée au bourbier: thou makest use of any thing.

Con. Yet do I not use my horse for my mistress; or any such proverb so little kin to the purpose.

Ram. My lord constable, the armour that I saw in your tent to-night, are those stars or suns upon it?

Con. Stars, my lord.

Dau. Some of them will fall to-morrow, I hope.

Con. And yet my sky shall not want.

Dau. That may be, for you bear a many superfluously, and 'twere more honour some were away.

Con. Even as your horse bears your praises; who would trot as well were some of your brags dismounted.

Dau. Would I were able to load him with his desert! Will it never be day? I will trot to-morrow a mile, and my way shall be paved with English faces.

60. lie{f} Capell; liue F. 66. et] Rowe; est F. truie] Rowe; lenye F.

60. jade] (a) a horse, (b) a loose woman.

65-70, 113-25. There is a proverb-capping contest in Grange, Golden Aphroditis, 1577, Sig. D4v.

65-6. Le chien ... bourbier] 2 Peter ii. 22. Noble notes that the version is that of de Tournes' Testament, Lyons, 1551. It is not impossible that Shakespeare translated the English version directly into French. Cf. 2H4 i. iii. 97-9.

71. stars] Apparently some form of ornamentation without any heraldic significance (Giles, p. 116).

74-5. Some ... want] The Constable replies that his honour will be in no way diminished. "Sky" here may be Falstaff's "clear sky of fame" (2H4 iv. iii. 56). There may be a proverbial expression behind these lines. J. Grange, Golden Aphroditis, 1577, Sig. A4r, states that unkind critics of his work "say behinde my backe, 'A blazing starre will shoote'," implying that such splendour is transitory and contemptible.
Con. I will not say so for fear I should be faced out of my way. But I would it were morning, for I would fain be about the ears of the English.

Ram. Who will go to hazard with me for twenty prisoners?

Con. You must first go yourself to hazard, ere you have them.

Dau. 'Tis midnight; I'll go arm myself. [Exit.

Orl. The Dauphin longs for morning.

Ram. He longs to eat the English.

Con. I think he will eat all he kills.

Orl. By the white hand of my lady, he's a gallant prince.

Con. Swear by her foot, that she may tread out the oath.

Orl. He is simply the most active gentleman of France.

Con. Doing is activity, and he will still be doing.

Orl. He never did harm, that I heard of.

Con. Nor will do none to-morrow: he will keep that good name still.

Orl. I know him to be valiant.

Con. I was told that by one that knows him better than you.

Orl. What's he?

Con. Marry, he told me so himself; and he said he cared not who knew it.

Orl. He needs not; it is no hidden virtue in him.

Con. By my faith, sir, but it is; never any body saw it but his lackey: 'tis a hooded valour; and when it appears, it will bate.

Orl. Ill will never said well.

85-6. faced . . . way] (a) put out of countenance, shamed, (b) driven off.

88. go to hazard] take a wager. Cf. 4 Chorus 17-19.


98. tread out] spurn, treat with contempt.

112. but his lackey] i.e. his lackey is the only one who has felt the valour of his blows.

112-13. hooded . . . bate] valour concealed as a hawk is masked by its hood, and, like a hawk unhooded in the presence of game, gives a little flutter.

113. bate] (a) flutter, (b) dwindle. For the association of courage and a hawk's flight cf. Rz 1.1. 109, "how high a pitch his resolution soars", and John ii. 1. 82.
Con. I will cap that proverb with "There is flattery in friendship."

Orl. And I will take up that with "Give the devil his due."

Con. Well placed: there stands your friend for the devil: have at the very eye of that proverb with "A pox of the devil."

Orl. You are the better at proverbs, by how much "A fool's bolt is soon shot."

Con. You have shot over.

Orl. 'Tis not the first time you were overshot.

Enter a Messenger.

Mess. My lord high constable, the English lie within fifteen hundred paces of your tents.

Con. Who hath measured the ground?

Mess. The Lord Grandpré.

Con. A valiant and most expert gentleman. Would it were day! Alas! poor Harry of England, he longs not for the dawning as we do.

Orl. What a wretched and peevish fellow is this king of England, to mope with his fat-brained followers so far out of his knowledge!

Con. If the English had any apprehension, they would run away.

Orl. That they lack; for if their heads had any intellectual armour, they could never wear such heavy head-pieces.

Ram. That island of England breeds very valiant creatures; their mastiffs are of unmatchable courage.


122. how much] as much as.

124. shot over] i.e. over the mark.

125. overshot] outshot, beaten in shooting.

127. fifteen hundred paces] Considerably farther than Holinshed's "two hundred and fiftie pases."

133. peevish] thoughtless, foolish.

134-5. to mope ... knowledge] to wander aimlessly with his stupid followers leaving his common sense so far behind him.

136. apprehension] (a) common sense, intelligence, (b) fear.

142. mastiffs] The English mastiff had a high reputation for courage.
Orl. Foolish curs! that run winking into the mouth of a Russian bear and have their heads crushed like rotten apples. You may as well say that's a valiant flea that dare eat his breakfast on the lip of a lion.

Con. Just, just; and the men do sympathize with the mastiffs in robustious and rough coming on, leaving their wits with their wives: and then give them great meals of beef and iron and steel, they will eat like wolves and fight like devils.

Orl. Ay, but these English are shrewdly out of beef.

Con. Then shall we find to-morrow they have only stomachs to eat and none to fight. Now is it time to arm; come, shall we about it?

Orl. It is now two o'clock: but, let me see, by ten We shall have each a hundred Englishmen.

[Exeunt.

156. o'] Theobald (ed. 2); a F.

147. sympathize with] resemble.

150-4. great meals . . . to fight] This may have been prompted by Hall, xlvii-xlviii: "keepe an Englishman one moneth from his warme bed, fat befe and stale drynke, and let him that season tast colde and suffre hunger, you then shall se his courage abated." The idea, however, was common. Famous Victories, Sig. E4' follows Hall very closely, but does not mention beef. Moore Smith quotes Edward III iii. iii. 159, "but scant them of their chines of beefe And take awaie their downie fether bedes, And presently they are as resty stiffe As twere a many ouer ridden iades". 154. stomachs] inclinations.
ACT IV

Enter Chorus.

Now entertain conjecture of a time
When creeping murmur and the poring dark
Fills the wide vessel of the universe.
From camp to camp through the foul womb of night
The hum of either army stilly sounds,
That the fix'd sentinels almost receive
The secret whispers of each other's watch:
Fire answers fire, and through their paly flames
Each battle sees the other's umber'd face;
Steed threatens steed, in high and boastful neighs
Piercing the night's dull ear; and from the tents
The armourers, accomplishing the knights,
With busy hammers closing rivets up,

ACT IV

Chorus

1. entertain conjecture] imagine.
2. poring] eye-straining.
4. paly] (a) pale, (b) divided by vertical lines with alternate tinctures (in heraldry).
5. battle] army.
6. umber'd] Three interpretations have been put forward: (a) wearing a visor or umbrer, (b) shadowed, or stained as with umber, (c) outlined (in heraldry). The first seems premature in spite of the activities of the armourers (ll. 12-13), unless the phrase "umber'd face" is used figuratively for armed appearance or array. The second is favoured by most editors. The third was suggested by M. Holmes, N.Q. 5 August, 1952, p. 333. He interprets "umber'd" as a variant of "umberated" or "in ombre", a heraldic term meaning "depicted in outline only, the colour or colours of the field showing through". The term, he claims, was familiar to armorists in the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries. This third interpretation would suit well with the heraldic "paly", l. 8, and with the context, but further evidence of the use of "umber'd" would be desirable to make it acceptable.
7. accomplishing] completing the armouring of.
8. hammers closing rivets up] The helmet was riveted to the cuirass while the latter was being worn.
Give dreadful note of preparation.
The country cocks do crow, the clocks do toll,
And the third hour of drowsy morning name.
Proud of their numbers, and secure in soul,
The confident and over-lusty French
Do the low-rated English play at dice;
And chide the cripple tardy-gaited night
Who, like a foul and ugly witch, doth limp
So tediously away. The poor condemned English,
Like sacrifices, by their watchful fires
Sit patiently, and inly ruminate
The morning’s danger, and their gesture sad
Investing lank-lean cheeks and war-worn coats
Presenteth them unto the gazing moon
So many horrid ghosts. O, now, who will be-
hold
The royal captain of this ruin’d band
Walking from watch to watch, from tent to tent,
Let him cry, “Praise and glory on his head! ”
For forth he goes and visits all his host,
Bids them good-morrow with a modest smile,
And calls them brothers, friends and countrymen.
Upon his royal face there is no note
How dread an army hath enrounded him;
Nor doth he dedicate one jot of colour

16. name] Steevens (1778) after Tyrwhitt; nam’d F.
20. cripple tardy-
gaited] Capell; creeple-tardy-gated F.
27. Presenteth] Hamner; Presented F.

14. note] (a) sound, (b) warning.
17. secure] careless, over-confident.
18. over-lusty] over-merry.
20-1. night ... witch] Cf. iv. i. 277.
23. Like sacrifices] i.e. to Bellona or Mars. Cf. i. iv. i. 113-17.
28-47. There is no mention in Hall or Holinshed that Henry visited and cheered his soldiers on the eve of Agincourt. While there were precedents, classical and other
(cf. R3, v. iii. 69-71) Shakespeare may have drawn on the description of the siege of Harfleur in The First
and searched the watches, orders, and staciones of srecie part of his hoast, and whome he found diligent
he praised and thanked, and the negligent he corrected and chastened”.
36. enrounded] surrounded.
37-8. Nor ... night] Nor have his cheeks given up any of their fresh
colour because of a sleepless night.
Unto the weary and all-watched night;  
But freshly looks and overbears attain
With cheerful semblance and sweet majesty;
That every wretch, pining and pale before,
Beholding him, plucks comfort from his looks.
A largess universal like the sun
His liberal eye doth give to every one,
Thawing cold fear, that mean and gentle all,
Behold, as may unworthiness define,
A little touch of Harry in the night.
And so our scene must to the battle fly;
Where, O for pity! we shall much disgrace
With four or five most vile and ragged foils,
Right ill-dispos'd in brawl ridiculous,
The name of Agincourt. Yet sit and see;
Minding true things by what their mock'ries be.

[Exit.

"The marrow-eating sickness, whose attain"
Disorder breeds by heating of the blood".
43-4. *A largess ... one*] Baldwin II. 197-8, compares Quintilian, *Institutio*,
1580, p. 16, "Non enim vox illa praecceptionis, vt coena, minus pluribus sufficit: sed vt sol, vniuersis idem lucis caloriqu; largitur ". While "largess universal " may owe something to Quintilian, the shining of the sun on all alike was proverbial. Cf. *Tw.* N. iii. 45 and *Wint.* iv. iii. 457-8.

46. as ... define] as far as our unworthy selves can present it.
47. touch] description, account. Moore Smith quotes *H8* v. i. 12-13,
"Give your friend some touch of your late business".
50. four ... foils] Cf. Jonson's sneer in *Every Man In His Humour*,
Prologue 9-11,
"Or, with three rusty swords, And help of some few foot and half-foot words, Fight over York and Lancaster's long jars".
53. *Minding*] Calling to mind.
SCENE I.—The English Camp at Agincourt.

Enter King Henry, Bedford, and Gloucester.

K. Hen. Gloucester; 'tis true that we are in great danger; The greater therefore should our courage be. Good morrow, Bedford. God Almighty! There is some soul of goodness in things evil, Would men observingly distil it out; For our bad neighbour makes us early stirrers, Which is both healthful and good husbandry: Besides, they are our outward consciences, And preachers to us all; admonishing That we should dress us fairly for our end. Thus may we gather honey from the weed, And make a moral of the devil himself.

Enter Erpingham.

Good morrow, old Sir Thomas Erpingham: A good soft pillow for that good white head Were better than a churlish turf of France.

Erp. Not so, my liege: this lodging likes me better, Since I may say, "Now lie I like a king".

K. Hen. 'Tis good for men to love their present pains Upon example; so the spirit is eased:

Scene 1

The ... Agincourt] Theobald. King Henry] Rowe; the King F.
3. Good] Rowe; God F.

19. example] A rhetorical term. A species of simile, particularly an illustrative incident used for the purpose of encouraging or discouraging (see Susenbrotus, Epitome, 1565, p. 108).

Cf. LLL. i. ii. 67-122, where Armado asks for precedents to comfort him in love. He proposes to rewrite the King and the Beggar [Maid] "that I may example my digression by some mighty precedent" (see Baldwin II. 166-71).

19-23. Two thoughts are involved in these lines, (a) the reviving of a
And when the mind is quicken’d, out of doubt,
The organs, though defunct and dead before,
Break up their drowsy grave, and newly move
With casted slough and fresh legerity.
Lend me thy cloak, Sir Thomas. Brothers both,
Commend me to the princes in our camp;
Do my good-morrow to them; and anon
Desire them all to my pavilion.

Glou. We shall, my liege.

Erp. Shall I attend your grace?

K. Hen. No, my good knight;

Go with my brothers to my lords of England:
I and my bosom must debate awhile,
And then I would no other company.

Erp. The Lord in heaven bless thee, noble Harry!


Enter Pistol.

Pist. Qui va là?

K. Hen. A friend.


Che vous la? F.

mind heavy and dull with care,
linked with the snake-image in
“casted slough”, and (b) the awaken-
ing of the faculties after sleep,
linked with the death image in
“drowsy grave”.

In Galen’s doctrines the “vital
spirits” (spirit), generated in the
chambers of the brain, carried thence
the commands of the mind to the
bodily members. When the vital
spirits were exhausted by care or
tiredness, the mind, no longer re-
ceiving and sending the flow of vital
spirits relapsed into dulness or sleep,
and the body likewise was diminished
in function or slept until recalled
into activity by the command of the
mind.

20-2. And when . . . grave] Cf. the
association of sleep, vacant mind and
torpid body in ll. 284-5.

22. drowsy grave] The resemblance
between sleep and death is a common-
place in Shakespeare’s plays. Cf.
Mac. ii. iii. 81, “sleep, death’s coun-
terfeit”, and the tag from
Sententiae Pueriles, “sommus mortis
imago”. Cf. also Troil. iii. 201,
“thoughts unveil in their dumb
cradles”.

23. With casted slough] A snake is
sluggish and listless for a time im-
mediately preceding the shedding of
its skin.

23. legerity] nimbleness, briskness.

31-2. i . . . company] Dover Wilson
notes that this “seems to lead up to
a prayer, which we get at ll. 295-311.
See Introduction, p. xliii.
Pist. Discuss unto me; art thou officer?
    Or art thou base, common and popular?
K. Hen. I am a gentleman of a company.
Pist. Trail'st thou the puissant pike?
K. Hen. Even so. What are you?
Pist. As good a gentleman as the emperor.
K. Hen. Then you are a better than the king.
Pist. The king's a bawcock, and a heart of gold,
    A lad of life, an imp of fame;
    Of parents good, of fist most valiant:
    I kiss his dirty shoe, and from heart-string
    I love the lovely bully. What is thy name?
Pist. Le Roy! a Cornish name: art thou of Cornish crew?
K. Hen. No, I am a Welshman.
Pist. Know'st thou Fluellen?
K. Hen. Yes.
Pist. Tell him, I'll knock his leek about his pate
    Upon Saint Davy's day.
K. Hen. Do not you wear your dagger in your cap
    that day, lest he knock that about yours.
Pist. Art thou his friend?
K. Hen. And his kinsman too.
Pist. The figo for thee then!
K. Hen. I thank you. God be with you!
Pist. My name is Pistol called.
K. Hen. It sorts well with your fierceness,
Manet King] F at 63.

38. popular] i.e. of the people, common.
40. Trail'st . . . pike?] are you an infantryman? To trail the pike was
to hold it just below the head allowing the butt to trail on the ground
behind. This was the normal method of carrying the pike. Fortescue,
Shakespeare's England I. 115, writes, "gentlemen volunteers worked their
way up from the ranks, and more than one peer trailed a pike in the
regiments of Maurice Nassau".
44. bawcock] fine fellow. See iii, ii. 25.
44. heart of gold] i.e. perfect man, as gold was the perfect proportion
of elements. Greensleeves, too, was "my heart of gold".
45. imp of fame] child of fame. Pistol uses the same expression in
2H4 v. v. 47.
47. bully] fine fellow.
50. Cornish] Probably a glance at the old play Harry of Cornwall. See
Henslowe, Diary, ed. Greg, II. 151.
55. Saint Davy's day] 1st March.
Enter Fluellen and Gower.

Gow. Captain Fluellen!

Flu. So! in the name of Jesu Christ, speak fewer. It is the greatest admiration in the universal world, when the true and aunchient prerogatifies and laws of the wars is not kept. If you would take the pains but to examine the wars of Pompey the Great, you shall find, I warrant you, that there is no tiddle taddle nor pibble babble in Pompey's camp; I warrant you, you shall find the ceremonies of the wars, and the cares of it, and the forms of it, and the sobriety of it, and the modesty of it, to be otherwise.

Gow. Why, the enemy is loud; you hear him all night.

Flu. If the enemy is an ass and a fool and a prating coxcomb, is it meet, think you, that we should also, look you, be an ass and a fool and a prating coxcomb? in your own conscience now?

Gow. I will speak lower.

Flu. I pray you and beseech you that you will.

[Exeunt Gower and Fluellen.

65. speak fewer] Malone emended "fewer" to "lower" which is the reading of Q 3. This, however, is clearly a correction of Q 1 "lower". See Greg, Principles, pp. 143-4. Fluellen probably has in mind the tag, "pauc a verba", though oddly enough it is Fluellen who does all the talking, not Gower. Holinshed records that orders were given "that no noise or clamor should be made". Hall does not mention it.

66-8. It is...kept] i.e. it astonishes everyone that you do not observe the ancient principles of warfare.

66-84. The French chronicler Le Fèvre approved of Henry's discipline: "Et bien entretenoit la discipline de chevalerie comme jadis faisoient les Romains" (Wylie, III. 425, n. 2).

67. prerogatifies] "faculties by which a thing is specially or advantageously distinguished above others" (O.E.D.), superior principles.

71. tiddle taddle...pibble babble] tittle tattle...bibble babble.

74. sobriety] orderliness.

75. modesty] correctness of conduct, propriety (Lat. modestia).

76. the enemy is loud] Dover Wilson compares Gusta Henrici Quinti, p. 48, "audivimus adversariam hospitalatam, et unumque greg, ut moris est, vociferantem". Both Hall and Holinshed record that "they made great cheare and were vere merie".
K. Hen. Though it appear a little out of fashion,
  There is much care and valour in this Welshman.

Enter three soldiers, John Bates, Alexander Court, and Michael Williams.

Court. Brother John Bates, is not that the morning which breaks yonder?
Bates. I think it be; but we have no great cause to desire the approach of day.
Will. We see yonder the beginning of the day, but I think we shall never see the end of it. Who goes there?
K. Hen. A friend.
Will. Under what captain serve you?
Will. A good old commander and a most kind gentleman: I pray you, what thinks he of our estate?
K. Hen. Even as men wracked upon a sand, that look to be washed off the next tide.
Bates. He hath not told his thought to the king?
K. Hen. No; nor it is not meet he should. For, though I speak it to you, I think the king is but a man, as I am: the violet smells to him as it doth to me; the element shows to him as it doth

94. Thomas[ ] Pope (ed. 2) after Theobald; John F.

83. out of fashion] quaint.
87-8. Cf. m. vii. 131-2.
94. Thomas[ ] The F reading “John” is probably an erroneous expansion by the compositor of “Tho,” the usual abbreviation of Thomas, which he took to be “Tho,” the abbreviation for Jhon or John.
101-6. The common, human attributes of kings are referred to elsewhere in Shakespeare. Cf. iv. i. 244-5; R2 iii. ii. 175-7,
  “I live with bread like you, feel want,
  Taste grief, heed friends—subjected thus,”

How can you say to me, I am a king?”

There is an interesting parallel in Montaigne, Essays, tr. Florio, 1893, p. 309: “All the true commodities that Princes have, are common unto them, with men of meane fortune. It is for Gods to mount winged horses and to feed on Ambrosia. They have no other sleep nor no other appetite than ours. Their steele is of no better temper than that wherewith we arm ourselves” (see Revue Anglo-Américaine, 1931-32, p. 120).
103. element shows] sky appears.
to me; all his senses have but human conditions: his ceremonies laid by, in his nakedness he appears but a man; and though his affections are higher mounted than ours, yet when they stoop, they stoop with the like wing. Therefore when he sees reason of fears, as we do, his fears, out of doubt, be of the same relish as ours are: yet, in reason, no man should possess him with any appearance of fear, lest he, by showing it, should dishearten his army.

Bates. He may show what outward courage he will, but I believe, as cold a night as 'tis, he could wish himself in Thames up to the neck, and so I would he were, and I by him, at all adventures, so we were quit here.

K. Hen. By my troth, I will speak my conscience of the king: I think he would not wish himself any where but where he is.

Bates. Then I would he were here alone; so should he be sure to be ransomed, and a many poor men's lives saved.

K. Hen. I dare say you love him not so ill to wish him here alone, howsoever you speak this to feel other men's minds: methinks I could not die any where so contented as in the king's company, his cause being just and his quarrel honourable.

Will. That's more than we know.

Bates. Ay, or more than we should seek after; for we

104. conditions] dispositions, qualities.
105. ceremonies] accompaniments of royalty.
106. affections] emotions, desires.
107. are higher mounted] soar higher. An expression from falconry.
108. stoop] descend. Another word from falconry used to describe a hawk plunging down on its prey.
109-12. when . . . appearance of fear] when he sees reason for fear . . . yet he sees reason for not showing any signs of fear . . . The two "reasons" are balanced against each other.
111-12. should possess . . . fear] Cf. iv. i. 296.
111. possess him] take possession of him.
117. at all adventures] at all costs, whatever the risks.
118. so . . . here] as long as we were out of this.
119. my conscience] what I inwardly believe to be true.
119-21, 127-9, etc. Note the dramatic irony.
131. Bates] Capell proposed to assign this speech to Court on the grounds that Bates is a grumbler.
know enough if we know we are the king's subjects. If his cause be wrong, our obedience to the king wipes the crime of it out of us.

**Will.** But if the cause be not good, the king himself hath a heavy reckoning to make; when all those legs and arms and heads, chopped off in a battle, shall join together at the latter day, and cry all, "We died at such a place"; some swearing, some crying for a surgeon, some upon their wives left poor behind them, some upon the debts they owe, some upon their children rawly left. I am afraid there are few die well that die in a battle; for how can they charitably dispose of any thing when blood is their argument? Now, if these men do not die well, it will be a black matter for the king that led them to it, who to disobey were against all proportion of subjection.

**K. Hen.** So, if a son that is by his father sent about merchandise do sinfully miscarry upon the sea, the imputation of his wickedness, by your rule, should be imposed upon his father that sent him: or if a servant, under his master's command transporting a sum of money, be assailed by robbers and die in many irreconciled iniquities, you may call the business of the master the author of the servant's damnation. But this is not so: the king is not bound to answer the


138-9. at the latter day] at the Day of Judgement. Cf. Job xix. 25, "I know that my redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the latter day upon the earth".

143. rawly] abruptly. Cf. Mac. iv. iii. 26-8, "Why in that rawness left you wife and child . . . Without leave-taking?"

144. die well] i.e. die a Christian death.

145. charitably dispose . . . thing] settle any thing "in love and charity" with their neighbour.

146. blood is their argument] they are engaged in shedding blood.

149. proportion of subjection] the rightful duties of a subject.

151. sinfully miscarry] die in his sins.

152. imputation of] responsibility for.

156. irreconciled] unsolved, unatoned.

159. answer] answer for.
particular endings of his soldiers, the father of his 160 son, nor the master of his servant; for they purpose not their death when they purpose their services. Besides there is no king, be his cause never so spotless, if it come to the arbitrement of swords, can try it out with all unspotted soldiers. 165 Some, peradventure, have on them the guilt of premeditated and contrived murder; some, of beguiling virgins with the broken seals of perjury; some, making the wars their bulwark, that have before gored the gentle bosom of peace 170 with pillage and robbery. Now, if these men have defeated the law and outrun native punishment, though they can outstrip men, they have no wings to fly from God: war is his beadle, war is his vengeance; so that here men are punished 175 for before-breach of the king’s laws in now the king’s quarrel: where they feared the death they have borne life away, and where they would be safe they perish. Then, if they die unprovided, no more is the king guilty of their damnation 180 than he was before guilty of those impieties for which they are now visited. Every subject’s duty is the king’s; but every subject’s soul is his own. Therefore should every soldier in the wars do as every sick man in his bed, wash every 185

169-71. making ... robbery] fleeing from retribution to the shelter of the wars after committing crimes during peace time.
172. native] in their native land.
173-5. though ... vengence] Cf. Amos ix. 2-4, where God’s vengeance is to be wrecked on those who seek to escape “though they go into captivity before their enemies, thence will I command the sword, and it shall slay them”. Again, in a famous passage in Ps. cxxxix. 9 the fugitive in vain takes the “wings of the morning”.
176-9. Note the antitheses “before ... now”, “death ... life”, “safe ... perish”.
177-9. where ... perish] Cf. Matt. xvi. 25, etc.
179. unprovided] unprepared; i.e. without reconciling their souls to God.
182. visited] punished.
mote out of his conscience; and dying so, death is to him advantage; or not dying, the time was blessedly lost wherein such preparation was gained: and in him that escapes, it were not sin to think that, making God so free an offer, he let him outlive that day to see his greatness, and to teach others how they should prepare.

*Will.* 'Tis certain, every man that dies ill, the ill upon his own head; the king is not to answer it.

*Bates.* I do not desire he should answer for me; and yet I determine to fight lustily for him.

*K. Hen.* I myself heard the king say he would not be ransomed.

*Will.* Ay, he said so, to make us fight cheerfully; but when our throats are cut, he may be ransomed, and we ne'er the wiser.

*K. Hen.* If I live to see it, I will never trust his word after.

*Will.* You pay him then! That's a perilous shot out of an elder-gun, that a poor and a private displeasure can do against a monarch. You may as well go about to turn the sun to ice with fanning in his face with a peacock's feather. You'll never trust his word after! come, 'tis a foolish saying.

*K. Hen.* Your reproof is something too round: I should be angry with you if the time were convenient.

*Will.* Let it be a quarrel between us, if you live.

*K. Hen.* I embrace it.

*Will.* How shall I know thee again?

*K. Hen.* Give me any gage of thine, and I will wear it in my bonnet: then, if ever thou darest ac-

knowledge it, I will make it my quarrel.

---

186. mote] Malone; Moth F.

186. mote] The F reading "Moth" is a Shakesperian spelling but is used by other writers.

186-7. death . . . advantage] Cf. Philem. i. 21, "For Christ [is] to me life, and death is to me advantage".

197-8. I . . . ransomed] So Hall and Holinshed.

203. pay him] pay him out.

203-4. That's . . . elder-gun] that's as much as to expect a deadly bullet from a pop-gun. Pop-guns used to be made out of elder-wood from which the pith had been removed.

204-5. a poor . . . displeasure] the displeasure of a poor, common man.

209. round] blunt.
Will. Here's my glove: give me another of thine.

K. Hen. There.

Will. This will I also wear in my cap: if ever thou come to me and say after to-morrow, "This is 220 my glove", by this hand I will take thee a box on the ear.

K. Hen. If ever I live to see it, I will challenge it.

Will. Thou darest as well be hanged.

K. Hen. Well, I will do it, though I take thee in the 225 king's company.

Will. Keep thy word: fare thee well.

Bates. Be friends, you English fools, be friends: we have French quarrels enow, if you could tell how to reckon.

K. Hen. Indeed, the French may lay twenty French crowns to one, they will beat us; for they bear them on their shoulders: but it is no English treason to cut French crowns, and to-morrow the king himself will be a clipper. 

[Exeunt Soldiers. 235

Upon the king! let us our lives, our souls, Our debts, our careful wives, Our children, and our sins lay on the king! We must bear all. O hard condition!

Twin-born with greatness, subject to the breath
Of every fool, whose sense no more can feel
But his own wringing. What infinite heart's ease
Must kings neglect that private men enjoy!
And what have kings that privates have not too,


221. take] strike.
221. lay] (a) bet, (b) match.
232. crowns] (a) heads, (b) gold coins (écus) worth about 6s. each.
234. treason] The clippers of coins were punished under the law against treason.

236 ff. For variations on the theme of the cares of kingship cf. R2 III. ii. 144-77; 2H4 III. i. 4-31; IV. v. 21-31, etc.

237. careful] anxious.
240. breath] utterance, speech.
244-55. Grether, Das Verhältnis von Shakespeares Heinrich V zu Sir T. Elyot's Governor, 1938, notes a parallel: Governor, ed. Croft, 1880, II. 206-7: "Thy dignitie or autorita, where- in thou onely differest from other, is (as it were) but a weighty or hevy cloke, fresshely
Save ceremony, save general ceremony?
And what art thou, thou idol ceremony?
What kind of god are thou, that suffer'st more
Of mortal griefs than do thy worshippers?
What are thy rents? what are thy comings-in?
O ceremony, show me but thy worth!
What is thy soul of adoration?
Art thou aught else but place, degree, and form,
Creating awe and fear in other men?
Wherein thou art less happy, being fear'd,
Than they in fearing.
What drink'st thou oft, instead of homage sweet,
But poison'd flattery? O be sick, great greatness,
And bid thy ceremony give thee cure!
Think'st thou the fiery fever will go out
With titles blown from adulation?
Will it give place to flexure and low-bending?
Canst thou, when thou command'st the beggar's knee,
Command the health of it? No, thou proud dream.

251. What...adoration] Knight. What is thy Soule of Odoration F 1; What?
is thy Soule of Adoration F 2.

259. Think'st] Rowe; Thinks F.

259. Think'st] Rowe's emendation.
The form of the second person singular without the "t" is found elsewhere in Shakespeare.

259-60. Think'st...adulation] Do you think that the fires of fever will be extinguished by the empty breath of flatterers? Cf. Pericles i. ii. 38-41,
That play'st so subtly with a king's repose;
I am a king that find thee; and I know
'Tis not the balm, the sceptre and the ball,
The sword, the mace, the crown imperial,
The intertissued robe of gold and pearl,
The farced title running 'fore the king,
The throne he sits on, nor the tide of pomp
That beats upon the high shore of this world,
No, not all these, thrice-gorgeous ceremony,
Not all these, laid in bed majestical,
Can sleep so soundly as the wretched slave,
Who with a body fill'd and vacant mind
Gets him to rest, cramm'd with distressful bread;
Never sees horrid night, the child of hell,
But, like a lackey, from the rise to set

56v-57v, to which Shakespeare has added some details from Horace, Bk. III, Ode I. 17-24. Here Shakespeare follows the general structure of Priscian's theme, but, as in 2H4, changes its basic thought that princes ought not to sleep all night to "un-easy lies the head . . . ".

263. proud dream] For the association of a dream with flattery, cf. Sonnet 87,

"Thus have I had thee, as a dream doth flatter
In sleep a king, but waking, no such matter."

265. find] expose, find out.

266. balm] consecrated oil used to anoint a king at his coronation. Cf. 3H6 iii. i. 18.

269. farced title] the lengthy, flattering titles by which a king is addressed. See Introduction, p. xvii.

269. farced] stuffed.

270-1. nor the tide . . . world] Perhaps the "sea of glory" in which Wolsey foundered. See H8 ii. 359-66. Dover Wilson refers to Sonnet 64 for the imagery of the sea,

"When I have seen the hungry ocean gain
Advantage on the kingdom of the shore".

But Erasmus has both:

"Ea littora sollemus diligentissime
communiere, quae vehementissimam fluctuum vim excipiunt.
Sunt autem innumerac res, quae possint Principum animos a recto dimovere . . . super omnia vero adulatio" (Institutio, Opera, IV. 564 c.).

274-6. Cf. Eccler. v. 2,

"A labouring man sleepeth sweetely",

Horace, Bk. III, Ode I. 21-3,

"summis agrestium lenis virorum non humilis domos fastidit."

and Meas. iv. ii. 69-70.


277. horrid . . . hell] Probably Hecate whom Shakespeare elsewhere seems to identify with night (Root, Classical Mythology, 1903, pp. 53-6).

Baldwin, ii. 440, quotes:

"Cumque illis Hecate properans
horrenda cucurrit,
Gui trimum caput est, genuit
quam Tartarum olim."

Cf. Lucr., I. 764,

"O comfort-killing Night, image of hell!"

278. lackey] a footman who ran by the coach of his master.
Sweats in the eye of Phœbus, and all night
Sleeps in Elysium; next day after dawn,
Doth rise and help Hyperion to his horse,
And follows so the ever-running year
With profitable labour to his grave:
And, but for ceremony, such a wretch,
Winding up days with toil and nights with sleep,
Had the fore-hand and vantage of a king.
The slave, a member of the country’s peace,
Enjoys it; but in gross brain little wots
What watch the king keeps to maintain the peace,
Whose hours the peasant best advantages.

Enter Erpingham.

Erp. My lord, your nobles, jealous of your absence,
Seek through your camp to find you.

K. Hen. Good old knight,
Collect them all together at my tent;
I’ll be before thee.

Erp. I shall do’t, my lord. [Exit.

K. Hen. O God of battles! steel my soldiers’ hearts;
Possess them not with fear; take from them now


279. Phœbus] the sun-god.
280. Elysium] classical abode of the virtuous dead on an island in the western ocean. Vergil later placed it in Hades. Here it is used loosely for “paradise”.
281. Hyperion] Son of Uranus and father of the sun-god, Helios, with whom he is often confused. The labourer helps the sun god to harness his horses to his chariot. For the F reading cf. note iii. i. 24.
286. had . . . vantage] would be more favourably and advantageously situated.
287. member] sharer. Cf. Oth. iii. iv. 112, “a member of his love”.
290. Whose . . . advantages] whose hours are most profitable to the peasant. Evans compares R 3 iv. iv. 324, “Advantaging their loan with interest”.
291. jealous] anxious, worried.
295-6. steel . . . fear] Cf. 2H6 iii. i. 331, “Now York, or never, steel thy fearful thoughts”.
295-8. steel . . . them] Cf. Hall xliv, “Therefore puttynge your onely truste in hym, let not their multytyde feare youre heartes, nor their greate noumbrre abate your courages”.
The sense of reckoning, if th' opposed numbers
Pluck their hearts from them. Not to-day, O Lord!
O not to-day, think not upon the fault
My father made in compassing the crown!
I Richard's body have interred new,
And on it have bestow'd more contrite tears
Than from it issued forced drops of blood.
Five hundred poor I have in yearly pay,
Who twice a day their wither'd hands hold up
Toward heaven, to pardon blood; and I have built
Two chantries, where the sad and solemn priests
Sing still for Richard's soul. More will I do;
Though all that I can do is nothing worth,
Since that my penitence comes after all,
Imploring pardon.

Enter Gloucester.

Glou. My liege!
K. Hen. My brother Gloucester's voice! Ay;
I know thy errand, I will go with thee:
The day, my friends, and all things stay for me.

[Exeunt.

297-8. reckoning . . . Pluck] Steevens (1778) after Tyrwhitt; reckoning of th' opposed numbers: Pluck F; reck'ning; lest th' opposed numbers Pluck Theobald.

297. if] Tyrwhitt's conjecture "if" for the F "of" is graphically much more likely than Moore Smith's conjecture "or" (before) and has therefore been retained.
300. compassing] obtaining.
301. I Richard's . . . new] So Holinshed. Richard II treated Henry very kindly during his father's banishment, and a real friendship sprang up between them. This reburial may have been a mark of this friendship (Jacob, p. 24).

307. Two chantries] Henry built two religious houses, one at Sheen for the Carthusian monks and the other at Sion, Twickenham, for the Augustinian order. Shakespeare's information is apparently drawn from Fabyan's Chronicle, 1516, p. 589, and not from Hall or Holinshed. Aldis Wright notes that the charters of foundation do not suggest that Henry established the houses so that masses might be sung for Richard's soul.
SCENE II.—The French Camp.

Enter the Dauphin, Orleans, Rambures, and Beaumont.

Orl. The sun doth gild our armour; up, my lords!
Dau. Montez à cheval! My horse! varlet! lacquais! ha!
Orl. O brave spirit!
Dau. Via! les eaux et la terre!
Orl. Rien puis? l’air et le feu!
Dau. Ciel! cousin Orleans.

Enter Constable.

Now, my lord constable!

Con. Hark, how our steeds for present service neigh!
Dau. Mount them, and make incision in their hides,
That their hot blood may spin in English eyes,
And dout them with superfluous courage, ha!

Ram. What, will you have them weep our horses’ blood?
How shall we then behold their natural tears?

Enter Messenger.

Mess. The English are embattail’d, you French peers.
Con. To horse, you gallant princes! straight to horse!

Do but behold yon poor and starved band,

Scene ii


Scene ii

Beaumont does not speak nor does he appear elsewhere in the play.

1-6. Various editors have tried to improve the French of these lines. The consensus of opinion is that the Dauphin, still thinking of his palfrey in terms of his previous description, says, “Away, over water and land”. At this Orleans mockingly asks, “What, nothing more? not air and fire too?” And the Dauphin replies, “Yes, Heaven itself”.

9. make incision] i.e. with spurs.
11. dout] extinguish.
11. superfluous courage] i.e. overflowing blood.
16-24. Do ... them] Cf. iii. v. 56-9. The germ of this is in the Constable’s speech in Hall, xlvi, “And on the otherside is a small handfull of pore Englishmen ... which by reason that their vitaill is consumed & spent, are by daily famyn sore weakened, consumed & almost without
And your fair show shall suck away their souls,
Leaving them but the shales and husks of men.
There is not work enough for all our hands;
Scarce blood enough in all their sickly veins
To give each naked curtale-axe a stain,
That our French gallants shall to-day draw out,
And sheathe for lack of sport: let us but blow on them,
The vapour of our valour will o’erturn them.
’Tis positive ’gainst all exceptions, lords,
That our superfluous lackeys and our peasants,
Who in unnecessary action swarm
About our squares of battle, were enow
To purge this field of such a hilding foe,
Though we upon this mountain’s basis by
Took stand for idle speculation:
But that our honours must not. What’s to say?
A very little little let us do,
And all is done. Then let the trumpets sound
The tucket sonance and the note to mount:
For our approach shall so much dare the field
That England shall couch down in fear, and yield.

Enter Grandpré.

25. ’gainst [F 2; against F 1. 35. sonance] Johnson; Sonancce F.

spirites: for their force is clery
abated and their strength vitrly
decayed, so y’ or the battailes shall
joyne they shalbe for very feblenes
vaquished & ouercom, & instede of
men ye shal fight with shadowes....
Therefore nowe, it is no mastery to
vanquishe and overthawe them,
beuyng both wery & weake, for by
reason of feblenes and faintnes their
weapones shall fall out of their handes
when they profer to strike.”

18. shales] shells.
23. sheathe... sport] Cf. m. i. 21.
25. exceptions] objections.
2H4 i. i. 57, “some hilding fellow”.
30. mountain’s basis] A hill in Holinhed.

31. for idle speculation] as idle onlookers.
33-4. A very... done] Cf. Hall, xlviii*, “... whiche pray is surely
yours if every man strike but one
stroke.... Therefore good felowes
take courage to you, the victory is
yours, the gaine is yours & the honor
is yours without greate laboure or
much losse.”

35. tucket sonance] sound of
the trumpet. Cf. ill. vi. 118. O.E.D. has
only one contemporary example of
“sonance”; from Heywood, Lucrece,
1608 (pr. 1638).
36. dare] terrify, paralyze with
fright (a word used in fowling and
akin to “daze”. Cf. H8 m. ii. 28a,
“And dare us with his cap like larks”.
37. couch] crouch.
Grant. Why do you stay so long, my lords of France? Yon island carrions, desperate of their bones, Ill-favour'dly become the morning field: Their ragged curtains poorly are let loose, And our air shakes them passing scornfully: Big Mars seems bankrupt in their beggar'd host, And faintly through a rusty beaver peeps: The horsemen sit like fixed candlesticks, With torch-staves in their hand; and their poor jades Lob down their heads, dropping the hides and hips, The gum down-roping from their pale-dead eyes, And in their pale dull mouths the gimmal'd bit Lies foul with chaw'd grass, still and motionless; And their executors, the knavish crows, Fly o'er them all, impatient for their hour. Description cannot suit itself in words To demonstrate the life of such a battle In life so lifeless as it shows itself.

Con. They have said their prayers, and they stay for death. Dau. Shall we go send them dinners and fresh suits, And give their fasting horses provender, And after fight with them?

49. gimmal'd] Delius; Iymold E; gimmal Johnson. 52. them all,) F; them, all Rowe. 55. lifeless] Capell; lifeless F.

41. curtains] banners.
42. passing] exceeding.
43-4. Big . . . peeps] i.e. the spirit of war, almost absent from their army, shows but faint-heartedly.
44. beaver] visor.
45-6. The . . . hand] Steevens quotes Webster, White Devil, ed. Dyce, 1857, p. 19: "I saw him at last tilting: he showed like a pewter candlestick, fashioned like a man in armour, holding a tilting-staff in his hand, little bigger than a candle of twelve i' the pound." Apparently candlesticks were made in this form.
47. Lob] droop, hang down.

49. gimmal'd bit] i.e. twin bits, consisting of two similar parts hinged together. Cf. interleaved armour mentioned in Edward III, i. ii. 26-9, "Jacks of Gynmould mayle ".
51. executors] those who dispose of what the dead leave behind. Evans quotes Topsell, History of Four-footed Beasts, ed. 1673, p. 177, "He destroyeth them . . . and so maketh himself executor to their heeps of honey ".
52. them all] Rowe's reading "them, all" gives better sense, but as F reading gives a sound meaning it has been retained.
54. the life of] to the life.
Con. I stay but for my guard. On to the field!
  I will the banner from a trumpet take,
  And use it for my haste. Come, come, away!
  The sun is high, and we outwear the day.       [Exeunt.

SCENE III.—The English Camp.

Enter Gloucester, Bedford, Exeter, Erpingham, with
all his host; Salisbury, and Westmoreland.

Glou. Where is the king?
Bed. The king himself is rode to view their battle.
West. Of fighting men they have full threescore thousand.
Exe. There's five to one; besides, they are all fresh.
Sal. God's arm strike with us! 'tis a fearful odds.

      God bye you, princes all; I'll to my charge:
      If we no more meet till we meet in heaven,
      Then, joyfully, my noble Lord of Bedford,
      My dear Lord Gloucester, and my good Lord Exeter,
      And my kind kinsman, warriors all, adieu!

Bed. Farewell, good Salisbury; and good luck go with thee!

60. guard. On] F; guidon Rann.

Scene iii

The English Camp] Theobald.

Rowe.

60. guard. On] Many editors emend this to "guidon", a pennon, a word not found elsewhere in Shakespeare, referring to II. 60-1 for support. The emendation seems unnecessary as Holinshed makes both points: (a) that some of the French nobles left their followers behind, and, (b) that "the Duke of Brabant, when his standard was not come, caused a baner to be taken from a trumpet and fastened to a speare".

61. trumpet] trumpeter.
Exe. Farewell, kind lord. Fight valiantly to-day: And yet I do thee wrong to mind thee of it, For thou art fram’d of the firm truth of valour.

[Exit Salisbury.

Bed. He is as full of valour as of kindness; Princely in both.

Enter King Henry.

West. O that we now had here But one ten thousand of those men in England That do no work to-day!

K. Hen. What’s he that wishes so? My cousin Westmoreland? No, my fair cousin: If we are mark’d to die, we are enow To do our country loss; and if to live, The fewer men, the greater share of honour. God’s will! I pray thee, wish not one man more. By Jove, I am not covetous for gold, Nor care I who doth feed upon my cost; It earns me not if men my garments wear; Such outward things dwell not in my desires:


13-14. In the Folio these lines follow l. 11. Thirlby’s transposition is supported by Q although the speaker is Clarence and the passage is shortened. Greg suggests (*Principles*, p. 169) that these two lines were a marginal addition wrongly placed by the compositor. Perhaps they were an afterthought. It will be noted that l. 15 follows naturally after l. 11 as well as after l. 14. Dover Wilson’s suggestion that the compositor skipped l. 12 and then inserted it in the wrong place is less likely, involving as it does two distinct errors by the compositor.

16-18. *O ... to-day*] Holinshed records the wish but not the speaker who, according to the *Gesta* was Walter Hungerford. The *Gesta* also seems to be the authority for the figure ten thousand (p. 47): “qui-dam dominus Walterus Hungyrford miles impraeabatur ad faciem regis quod habuisset ad illam paucam familiar quam ibi habuit decem milia de melioribus sagitaris Angliae, qui secum desiderarent esse”.


23. *not one man more*] One of Henry’s standards in this battle bore the motto “une sanz plus” (Giles, p. 108).

23, 24. *God’s will ... By Jove*] Johnson comments, “The King prays like a Christian and swears like a heathen”. “Jove”, however, was probably substituted for some such word as “God” to avoid contravening the Act of 1605 against profanity on the stage (Evans).
But if it be a sin to covet honour,  
I am the most offending soul alive.  
No, faith, my coz, wish not a man from England:  
God's peace! I would not lose so great an honour  
As one man more, methinks, would share from me,  
For the best hope I have. O do not wish one more!  
Rather proclaim it, Westmoreland, through my host,  
That he which hath no stomach to this fight,  
Let him depart; his passport shall be made,  
And crowns for convoy put into his purse:  
We would not die in that man's company  
That fears his fellowship to die with us.  
This day is call'd the feast of Crispian:  
He that outlives this day, and comes safe home,  
Will stand a tip-toe when this day is nam'd,  
And rouse him at the name of Crispian.  
He that shall see this day, and live old age,  
Will yearly on the vigil feast his neighbours,  
And say, "To-morrow is Saint Crispian":  
Then will he strip his sleeve and show his scars,  
And say, "These wounds I had on Crispin's day".

38. *die* Hudson after Coleridge.  
Wilson after Greg; *shall live* . . . *see* Pope; *shall see* . . . *live t'old* Kightley.  
44. *Shall see . . . live*] F, Dover  
48. *And . . . day*] added Q, Malone.

28-9. *But . . . alive*] Henry's desire for honour may have come from Hall xlix, "for this day by famous death or glorious victory I wyl wynne honor and obtaine fame".  
*Cf. rH4 m. ii. 138-52. Dover Wilson contrasts Hotspur's depreca- tion of any one "sharing in his honour" with Henry's gay encouragement to "his troops to rejoice in their luck" referring to rH4 l. iii. 201-8.

39. *die with*] Coleridge's conjecture "live with" is unnecessary, the existing reading makes good sense: We would not wish to die in the company of any man who fears to keep us company in death.  
*Cf. iv. viii. 103, "a royal fellowship of death".

40. *the feast of Crispian*] 25th October. Crispinus and Crispianus (l. 57) his brother, the patron saints of shoemakers, fled from Rome to Seissons in the time of Diocletian. They supported themselves by shoe- making, and suffered martyrdom in A.D. 287.  
44. Most editions follow Pope's arrangement. Greg, *Principles*, pp. 70-1, thinks that "such a transposition is by no means a likely error" and prefers Kightley's reading, "He that shall see this day, and live t'old age". This is possible but not convincing, and it seems better to follow Dover Wilson and leave the Folio reading unchanged.  
48. Malone added this line from Q. There is no real justification for
Old men forget; yet all shall be forgot, 50
But he’ll remember with advantages
What feats he did that day. Then shall our names,
Familiar in his mouth as household words,
Harry the king, Bedford and Exeter,
Warwick and Talbot, Salisbury and Gloucester,
Be in their flowing cups freshly remember’d. 55
This story shall the good man teach his son;
And Crispin Crispian shall ne’er go by,
From this day to the ending of the world,
But we in it shall be remembered;
We few, we happy few, we band of brothers;
For he to-day that sheds his blood with me
Shall be my brother; be he ne’er so vile
This day shall gentle his condition;
And gentlemen in England now a-bed
Shall think themselves accurs’d they were not here, 65
And hold their manhoods cheap whiles any speaks
That fought with us upon Saint Crispin’s day.

Re-enter Salisbury.

Sal. My sovereign lord, bestow yourself with speed:
The French are bravely in their battles set,
And will with all expedition charge on us.
K. Hen. All things are ready, if our minds be so.
West. Perish the man whose mind is backward now!
K. Hen. Thou dost not wish more help from England, coz?

49-50. be forgot, But] Q, Malone; be forgot: But F. 67. Re-enter]
Capell; Enter F.

its inclusion, but editors include it probably because as Greg notes, “it has a thoroughly genuine ring”, and because F omitted II. 1. 105 also preserved by Q.

50. with advantages] with pardonable exaggerations.

60. See Introduction, p. xxix.


63. gentle his condition] ennoble his rank. In 1418 Henry issued instructions to the Sheriff of Southampton restricting the right to assume coats of arms, but adding, “those excepted who bare arms with us at the battle of Agincourt” (Rymer, Foedera, IX. 457; Scott Giles, p. 121).

64-5. And ... here] Cf. “qui secum desiderarent esse” in the note to ll. 16-18 (Dover Wilson).

69. bravely ... set] making a brave show arrayed for battle. Cf. iv. ii. 17.

70. expedition] expedition, speed.
West. God’s will! my liege, would you and I alone,
Without more help, could fight this royal battle! 75
K. Hen. Why, now thou hast unwhisp’d five thousand men;
Which likes me better than to wish us one.
You know your places: God be with you all!

Tucket. Enter Montjoy.

Mont. Once more I come to know of thee, King Harry,
If for thy ransom thou wilt now compound, 80
Before thy most assured overthrow:
For certainly thou art so near the gulf
Thou needs must be englutted. Besides, in mercy,
The constable desires thee thou wilt mind
Thy followers of repentance; that their souls
May make a peaceful and a sweet retire
From off these fields, where, wretches, their poor bodies
Must lie and fester.

K. Hen. Who hath sent thee now?
Mont. The Constable of France.
K. Hen. I pray thee, bear my former answer back: 90
Bid them achieve me and then sell my bones.
Good God! why should they mock poor fellows thus?
The man that once did sell the lion’s skin

76, five thousand] According to ii. 3, 4 the English army numbered 12,000. Holinshed gives 15,000, the Gesta “sex milia . . . non excessit”. Wylie, II. 141-2, considers that the English army was a little more than 6000.

80. compound] come to terms. Cf. ii. i. 98.

91-4. Bid . . . him] Probably suggested by Hall’s comment on the “phantastical braggynge” of the Frenchmen immediately before the arrival of the herald to enquire what ransom Henry would offer (xliii). “Of thys doyng ye may gether, that it is as muche madenes to make a determinate judgement of things to come . . . ”.

93-4. The man . . . hunting him] The proverb comes from Aesop’s fable of the Hunter and the Countryman. Shakespeare, however, substitutes a lion for a bear, possibly deliberately to preserve the symbol of royalty. Baldwin, I. 629, shows that Shakespeare was drawing on the version of the story in Camerarius’ Fabelae Aesopicae, 1573, pp. 75-6. A countryman paid a hunter for a bear’s skin before the latter had caught a bear. Later, the over-confident hunter, surprised by the ferocity of the bear, managed to save his life by falling prostrate and shamming dead, what time the countryman took refuge in a tree. The bear, after sniffing at the
While the beast liv’d, was kill’d with hunting him.  
A many of our bodies shall no doubt  
Find native graves; upon the which, I trust,  
Shall witness live in brass of this day’s work;  
And those that leave their valiant bones in France,  
Dying like men, though buried in your dunghills,  
They shall be fam’d; for there the sun shall greet  
them,  
And draw their honours reeking up to heaven,  
Leaving their earthly parts to choke your clime,  
The smell whereof shall breed a plague in France.  
Mark then abounding valour in our English,  
That being dead, like to the bullet’s crasing,  
Break out into a second course of mischief,  
Killing in relapse of mortality.  
Let me speak proudly: tell the constable  

104. abounding] F; a bounding Theobald.  105. crasing] F, Q, Dover  Wilson; grasing F 2; grazing Theobald (ed. 2).
We are but warriors for the working-day;
Our gayness and our gilt are, all besmirch'd
With rainy marching in the painful field;
There's not a piece of feather in our host—
Good argument, I hope, we will not fly—
And time hath worn us into slovenry:
But, by the mass, our hearts are in the trim;
And my poor soldiers tell me, yet ere night
They'll be in fresher robes, or they will pluck
The gay new coats o'er the French soldiers' heads,
And turn them out of service. If they do this,
As, if God please, they shall, my ransom then
Will soon be levied. Herald, save thou thy labour;
Come thou no more for ransom, gentle herald:
They shall have none, I swear, but these my joints;
Which if they have as I will leave 'em them,
Shall yield them little, tell the constable.

Mont. I shall, King Harry. And so fare thee well:
Thou never shalt hear herald any more. [Exit.

K. Hen. I fear thou wilt once more come again for a ransom.

Enter York.

York. My lord, most humbly on my knee I beg
The leading of the vaward.

110. for the working-day] i.e. who mean business, not on holiday.
111. With rainy marching] Both Hall and Holinshed record that it rained by day and froze by night while Henry's troops were on the march. The Cesta (p. 48) and Liber Metricus, p. 119, refer to rain on the eve of Agincourt.
112. in a storm] i.e. to heaven;
113. they cannot''].
115. in the trim] (a) in fine fettle,
(b) fashionably attired. Cf. 1H4 iv. i. 113. 'They come like sacrifices in their trim''.

117. in fresher robes] i.e. in heavenly robes—a grim jest. Dover Wilson refers to Rev. vii. 9. Cf. also Rev. vi. 11.
118. turn them out of service] strip their liveried coats from them, and by so doing dismiss them from their master's service. The Elizabethan servant wore his master's livery which was taken from him when he left his master's service.
119. fear . . . ransom] The repetition in "once more come again" may be evidence of "foul papers"; although "once more . . . again" occurs in IV. v. 11 (Brooks).
120-30. So Hall and Holinshed.
K. Hen. Take it, brave York. Now, soldiers, march away:
And how thou pleasest, God, dispose the day!

[Exeunt.

SCENE IV.—The Field of Battle.

Alarums. Excursions. Enter Pistol, French Soldier,
and Boy.

Pist. Yield, cur!
Fr. Sold. Je pense que vous êtes le gentilhomme de
bonne qualité.

Pist. Qualtitie calmie custure me! Art thou a gentleman?
What is thy name? discuss.

Fr. Sold. O Seigneur Dieu!
Pist. O, Signieur Dew should be a gentleman:
Perpend my words, O Signieur Dew, and mark:
O Signieur Dew, thou diest on point of fox,
Except, O signeur, thou do give to me
Egregious ransom.

Fr. Sold. O, prenez misericorde! ayez pitié de moi!

Scene iv

The... Battle] Theobald. and Boy] Rowe; Boy F. 7-11. Pope's
arrangement. Prose F.

Scene iv

In Q. scene v precedes this scene and with justification since, as it
stands here, it is the opening battle scene. Pistol’s capture of the Frenchman
was surely at the “latter end of a fight”. This may have happened
following the alterations. See Introduction, p. xxxviii.

4. Qualtitie calmie custure me] Malone suggests that Pistol is quoting
the refrain of a song, “Calen o custure me”, which occurs in Robinson’s
Handful of Pleasant Delights, 1584, ed. Arber, p. 33. The words are probably
a corruption of an Irish phrase, “callin 6g a’ stor”, “young girl,
my darling”. Pistol, unable to understand French, echoes the last
word spoken and adds this untranslatable jumble by way of jocular
comment.

Warburton and others have sought to interpret it as “Qualtitie, call you
me, construe me!” or perhaps, “Qualtitie, cullion, construe me!”
Malone’s suggestion is preferable.

5-9. What is...fox] If Pistol is content with Signieur Dew as the
name of his prisoner, why should he again ask for his name in ll. 23-4? See Introduction, p. xxxviii.

9. fox] sword. The name is apparently derived from the maker’s
mark on Passau swords, originally a wolf, but in later times more like a
fox.

Pist. Moy shall not serve; I will have forty moys;
Or I will fetch thy rim out at thy throat
In drops of crimson blood.

Fr. Sold. Est-il impossible d’échapper la force de ton bras?

Pist. Brass, cur!
Thou damned and luxurious mountain goat,
Offer’st me brass?

Fr. Sold. O pardonnez-moi!

Pist. Say’st thou me so? is that a ton of moys?
Come hither, boy: ask me this slave in French
What is his name.

Boy. Écoutez: comment êtes-vous appelé?

Fr. Sold. Monsieur le Fer.

Boy. He says his name is Master Fer.

Pist. Master Fer! I’ll fer him, and firk him, and
ferret him. Discuss the same in French unto him.

Boy. I do not know the French for fer, and ferret, and
firk.

Pist. Bid him prepare, for I will cut his throat.

Fr. Sold. Que dit-il, monsieur?

Boy. Il me commande à vous dire que vous fai tes vous
prêt; car ce soldat ici est disposé tout à cette
heure de couper votre gorge.

Pist. Owy, cuppele gorge, permafoy,

Theobald; for F. 18-20. Johnson’s arrangement. Prose F.

13. Moy] “It seems unnecessary to
suppose that there is an allusion to
any genuine name of a coin”
(O.E.D.). However, “moy” was a
measure in English (about a bushell)
and in French, and Pistol may have
had this in mind. For the pronun-
ciation cf. the rhyme “pardonne-
moi”, “destroy”. Rs v. iii. 119-20.


17. 18. bras, Brass] Anders, Shakes-
peare’s Books, p. 50, points out that
his quibble is legitimate since final
“s” was still sounded in French
before a pause in Shakespeare’s time.
He refers for support to Thurot, De
la Prononciation Francaise depuis le
Commencement du XVIe Siècle, 1881-3.


28. I’ll fer him] For a similar repeti-
tion cf. Wis. iv. ii. 193 and Cor. II. i.

29. firk] whip, beat.

Dekker, Northward Ho (Works, cd.
1873, III. 64), “weele ferret them
and firk them, in faith”.

37. cuppele gorge] Cf. II. i. 71.
Peasant, unless thou give me crowns, brave crowns;  
Or mangled shalt thou be by this my sword.

Fr. Sold. O je vous supplie pour l’amour de Dieu,  
me pardonner! Je suis le gentilhomme de bonne  
maison: gardez ma vie, et je vous donnerai deux  
cents écus.

Pist. What are his words?
Boy. He prays you to save his life: he is a gentleman  
of a good house; and for his ransom he will give  
you two hundred crowns.

Pist. Tell him my fury shall abate, and I  
The crowns will take.

Fr. Sold. Petit monsieur, que dit-il?
Boy. Encore qu’il est contre son jurement de pardonner  
aucun prisonnier; néanmoins, pour les écus que  
yous l’avez promis, il est content de vous donner  
la liberté, le franchissement.

Fr. Sold. Sur mes genoux je vous donne mille remer-  
ciments; et je m’estime heureux que je suis tombé  
entre les mains d’un chevalier, je pense, le plus  
brave, vaillant, et très distingué seigneur d’Angle-  
terre.

Pist. Expound unto me, boy.
Boy. He gives you, upon his knees, a thousand thanks;  
and he esteems himself happy that he hath fallen  
into the hands of one, as he thinks, the most  
brave, valorous, and thrice-worthy signieur of  
England.

Pist. As I suck blood, I will some mercy show.  
Follow me!

Boy. Suivez-vous le grand capitaine.

[Exeunt Pistol and French Soldier.

I did never know so full a voice issue from so  
empty a heart: but the saying is true, “The  

48-9. Johnson’s arrangement, Prose F.  
53. l’avez promis] Malone;  
layt a promets F.  
55-6. remerciments] F 2; remercious F 1.  
tombé] Rowe; in tombe F.  
58. distingué] Capell; distinie F.  
66. Suivez] Rowe; Saaue F.  
68. Suiuez] Rowe; Saue F.  

48. fury shall abate] Cf. n. i. 66;  
69-70. so . . . heart] such boastful
m. ii. 23.  
66. As . . . blood] Cf. n. iii. 56.  
speech uttered by so cowardly a
man.
empty vessel makes the greatest sound”. Bardolph and Nym had ten times more valour than this roaring devil i’ the old play, that every one may pare his nails with a wooden dagger; and they are both hanged; and so would this be if he durst steal any thing adventurously. I must stay with the lackeys, with the luggage of our camp: the French might have a good prey of us if he knew of it; for there is none to guard it but boys.

[Exit. 80

SCENE V.—Another Part of the Field.

Enter Constable, Orleans, Bourbon, Dauphin, and Rambures.

Con. O diable!

Orl. O Seigneur! le jour est perdu! tout est perdu!

Dau. Mort Dieu! ma vic! all is confounded, all!

Reproach and everlasting shame
Sits mocking in our plumes. O méchante fortune!

Do not run away.

[Short alarum.

Scene v

Another . . . Field] added Theobald.

70-1. The empty . . . sound] Cf. 2H4 1. iii. 74-5.

73-4. this roaring . . . dagger]. In the Morality plays the Devil was beaten with a wooden dagger and driven from the stage. Cf. Haranct, Declaration of . . . Popish Imposture, 1603, pp. 114-5: “It was a pretty part in the old Church-plays, when the nimble Vice would . . . ride the devil a course, and belabour him with his wooden dagger, til he made him roar.” According to Malone the final indignity was to trim the Devil’s nails for him. Cf. Tw.N. iv. ii. 138-45.

73. this . . . that] this fellow who is a mere . . . so that (Abbott).

75. both hanged] This is the last we hear of Nym.

78-80. the French . . . boys] A grim premonition. Cf. iv. vii. 5, where Gower reports, “’Tis certain there’s not a boy left alive”.

Scene v


5. in our plumes] Dover Wilson notes that the notion of disdaining them from above is common in Shakespeare, and compares R2, iii. 1. 160-3.
KING HENRY V

Con. Why, all our ranks are broke.
Dau. O perdurable shame! let's stab ourselves.
   Be these the wretches that we play'd at dice for?
Orl. Is this the king we sent to for his ransom?
Bour. Shame, and eternal shame, nothing but shame!
   Let us die in arms: once more back again;
   And he that will not follow Bourbon now,
   Let him go hence, and with his cap in hand,
   Like a base pandar, hold the chamber-door
   Whilst by a slave, no gentler than my dog,
   His fairest daughter is contaminated.

Con. Disorder, that hath spoil'd us, friend us now!
   Let us on heaps go offer up our lives.

Orl. We are enow yet living in the field
   To smother up the English in our throns,
   If any order might be thought upon.

Bour. The devil take order now! I'll to the throns:
   Let life be short, else shame will be too long. [Exeunt.

11. die in arms] Ed. after Mason; dye in F; die in honour Knight; die in harness

Dover Wilson. 15. by a slave] Q, Pope; a base slave F 1; by a base slave F 2.
23. Exeunt] Rowe; Exit F.

11. in arms] The F reading has clearly omitted something. Most editors follow Knight in adding "honour" which occurs in the last line of the scene in Q,
   "Let's dye with honour, our shame
   doth last too long."

   "In honour", as Greg points out (Principles, p. 170), is not so natural a phrase as "with honour", and is hardly consistent with "eternal shame" in the preceding line.
   Wilson reads "harness" noting Mac. v. v. 52. But the phrase in Macbeth
   is "with harness"—though, of course, the situation is similar—and the expression "die in harness" is recent (see O.E.D.). There is no such objection to the present reading "in arms".
   Although "arms" leaves the line metrically short, the strong caesura may perhaps compensate for this.

11-23. Note the disorder of the distracted French nobles in contrast with the orderly control of Henry's army. Did Shakespeare remember a similar situation in Aeneid, ii. 314-17? There Aeneas, awakened by the confused fighting in Troy, seizes his arms distractedly, not with any particular plan in taking arms ("nec sat rationis in armis"), and he longs to gather a troop of men to rush to the defence of the citadel. In his reckless fury he thinks it would be glorious to die in arms ("pulchrum-que mori succurrít in armis").

15. by a slave] The F reading "a base slave" has obviously caught "base" from the preceding line.

15. gentler] nobler, better born.
17. spoil'd] ruined.
17. friend] befriend.
18. on heaps] in heaps. Cf. Troil. iii. ii. 27,
   "As doth a battle, when they charge on heaps.”

Dover Wilson compares Gesta, p. 55: "tanta crevit congeries occisorum," etc. Shakespeare may, however, have had Hall's phrase "on plumpes" in mind.
SCENE VI.—Another Part of the Field.

Alarum. Enter King Henry and his train with prisoners; Exeter and others.

K. Hen. Well have we done, thrice-valiant countrymen:
         But all's not done; yet keep the French the field.
Exe. The Duke of York commends him to your majesty.
K. Hen. Lives he, good uncle? thrice within this hour
         I saw him down; thrice up again and fighting;
         From helmet to the spur all blood he was.
Exe. In which array, brave soldier, doth he lie,
Larding the plain; and by his bloody side,
Yoke-fellow to his honour-owing wounds,
The noble Earl of Suffolk also lies.
         Suffolk first died; and York, all haggled over,
         Comes to him, where in gore he lay insteep’d,
         And takes him by the beard, kisses the gashes
         That bloodily did yawn upon his face;
         And cries aloud, “Tarry, my cousin Suffolk!
         My soul shall thine keep company to heaven;

Scene vi

Another . . . Field| Theobald. Alarum . . . others] Ed.; Alarum. Enter the King . . . others Dover Wilson; Alarums. Enter King Henry and Forces; Exeter and others Capell; Alarum. Enter the King and his trayne, with Prisoners F. 15. And] Q, Pope; He F. my] F, Dover Wilson; dear Q, Steevens (1778).

Scene vi

5. I saw him down] The French chronicler Monstrelet records that York was struck down by Alençon, and that Henry, trying to raise him, was struck by Alençon with such force that part of his crown was shorn off. Hall and Holinshed both mention that Alençon “almost felled” Henry.

8. Larding] enriching. Cf. 1H4 ii. ii. 117, where Falstaff “lards the lean earth”.

9. honour-owing] honourable, i.e. honour-owning. For “owe” meaning “possess”. Cf. Tp. iii. i. 45.

11. haggled] mangled, hacked.

15. And] The Q reading is an obvious improvement on F “He”, Greg, Principles, p. 173. Indeed, it is difficult to support “He” except, perhaps, on the supposition that Exeter pauses at the end of 1. 14 overcome by his emotions.

Greg observes that “it is difficult to suppose that F can be merely misprinted”. The alternative solution that Q was drawing on a revised F text would, however, lead to complexities better avoided. The compositor must bear the blame; perhaps he was faced with so malformed an ampersand that he read “he”, influenced no doubt by the verb immediately following.
Tarry, sweet soul, for mine, then fly abreast,
As in this glorious and well-foughten field
We kept together in our chivalry!"
Upon these words I came and cheer'd him up;
He smil'd me in the face, raught me his hand,
And, with a feeble gripe, says, "Dear my lord,
Commend my service to my sovereign".
So did he turn, and over Suffolk's neck
He threw his wounded arm, and kiss'd his lips;
And so espous'd to death, with blood he seal'd
A testament of noble-ending love.
The pretty and sweet manner of it forc'd
Those waters from me which I would have stopp'd;
But I had not so much of man in me,
And all my mother came into mine eyes
And gave me up to tears.

K. Hen. I blame you not;
For, hearing this, I must perforce compound
With mistful eyes, or they will issue too. [Alarum.
But, hark! what new alarum is this same?
The French have reinforc'd their scatter'd men:
Then every soldier kill his prisoners!
Give the word through. [Exeunt.

34. mistful] Theobald after Warburton; mixtfull F. 38. Exeunt] Rowe (ed. 3); Exit F.

25-7. and kiss'd ... love] For kisses as seals of love. Cf. Mes. iv. i. 5-6.
26-7. And ... testament] Possibly a reminiscence of "my blood of the new testament", Matt. xxvi. 28.
31. all ... eyes] All those womanly feelings in me inherited from my mother. Cf. Tw.N. ii. i. 42-4.
33. compound] come to terms. Cf. iv. iii. 80.
SCENE VII.—Another Part of the Field.

Enter Fluellen and Gower.

Flu. Kill the poys and the luggage! 'tis expressly against the law of arms: 'tis as arrant a piece of knavery, mark you now, as can be offer't; in your conscience now, is it not?

Gow. 'Tis certain there's not a boy left alive; and the cowardly rascals that ran from the battle ha' done this slaughter: besides, they have burned and carried away all that was in the king's tent; wherefore the king most worthily hath caused every soldier to cut his prisoner's throat. O, 'tis a gallant king!

Flu. Ay, he was born at Monmouth, Captain Gower. What call you the town's name where Alexander the Pig was born?

Gow. Alexander the Great.

Flu. Why, I pray you, is not pig great? the pig, or the great, or the mighty, or the huge, or the magnanimous, are all one reckonings, save the phrase is a little variations.

Scene vii

3. offer't; in] Camb.; offer't in F. 17. great] F 2; grea F 1.

But there is more behind it. Robson, Alexander the Great, 1929, p. 62, suggests that Fluellen's words may be a "dim parody" of Alexander's belief, according to Arrian and Strabo, that the Indus and the Nile were the same river because there were "crocodiles in both".

Again, while the distinction between Alexander drunk and Henry sober is delightfully done, Fluellen is also obeying Erasmus in that Henry is shown as superior to the pagan Alexander. See Introduction, p. xviii.

16-19. is not . . . variations] A word was frequently "varied" by quoting synonyms as here.
Gow. I think Alexander the Great was born in Macedon: his father was called Philip of Macedon, as I take it.

Flu. I think it is in Macedon where Alexander is born. I tell you, captain, if you look in the maps of the world, I warrant you shall find, in the comparisons between Macedon and Monmouth, that the situations, look you, is both alike. There is a river in Macedon, and there is also moreover a river at Monmouth: it is called Wye at Monmouth; but it is out of my prains what is the name of the other river; but 'tis all one, 'tis alike as my fingers is to my fingers, and there is salmons in both. If you mark Alexander's life well, Harry of Monmouth's life is come after it indifferent well; for there is figures in all things. Alexander, God knows, and you know, in his rages, and his furies, and his wraths, and his cholers, and his moods, and his displeasures, and his indignations, and also being a little intoxicates in his prains, did, in his ales and his angers, look you, kill his best friend, Cleitus.

Gow. Our king is not like him in that: he never killed any of his friends.

Flu. It is not well done, mark you now, to take the tales out of my mouth, ere it is made and finished. I speak but in the figures and comparisons of it: as Alexander killed his friend Cleitus, being in his ales and his cups, so also Harry Monmouth, being in his right wits and his good judgments, turned away the fat knight with the great-belly doublet:

34. come after] resembles. 35. figures] comparisons, parallels. 35-40. Cf. note to ll. 16-19. 41. Cleitus] The close friend and general of Alexander. During a banquet at Maracanda in 328 B.C. Alexander became heated with wine and boastful of his achievements and scornful of those of his father, Philip. Cleitus, also heated with wine, praised Philip and recklessly taunted Alexander. In his rage Alexander killed Cleitus with a spear snatched from his bodyguard. 50. great-belly doublet] The doublet originally had two thicknesses, hence its name. The lower part called the "belly" could be either "great" (stuffed) or "thin" (not stuffed). Cf. Stubbins, Anatomy of Abuse, ed. 1879, p. 55, "Their doublettes are noe lesse monstrous than the reste; For now
he was full of jests, and gipes, and knaveries, and mocks; I have forgot his name.

Gow. Sir John Falstaff.

Flu. That is he. I'll tell you there is good men porn at Monmouth.

Gow. Here comes his majesty.

Alarum. Enter King Henry and Bourbon with prisoners; Warwick, Gloucester, Exeter and others. Flourish.

K. Hen. I was not angry since I came to France
Until this instant. Take a trumpet, herald;
Ride thou unto the horsemen on yon hill:
If they will fight with us, bid them come down,
Or void the field; they do offend our sight.
If they'll do neither, we will come to them,
And make them skirr away, as swift as stones
Enforced from the old Assyrian slings.
Besides, we'll cut the throats of those we have,
And not a man of them that we shall take
Shall taste our mercy. Go and tell them so.

Enter Montjoy.

Exe. Here comes the herald of the French, my liege.

Glou. His eyes are humbler than they us'd to be.

56. Alarum...Flourish] Ed.; Enter King Harry and Burbon with prisoners. Flourish F; Alarum. Enter King Henry and Forces; Warwick, Gloucester, Exeter, and others Capell.

the fashion is to have them hang down
to the middest of their theirghes...being so harde-quilted, and stuffed,
bombasted and sewed, as they can
verie hardly cyther stoupe downe, or
decline them selves to the grounde ".
He later adds that they were "stuffed
with foure, five or six pound of
Bombast at the least".

58. trumpet] trumpeter.

59-67. Ride...mercy]. Holinshed
gives this incident, which is not in
Hall (see Appendix, p. 163). The
prisoners referred to in l. 65 were
Bourbon and those who followed him
at the end of iv. v. as Shakespeare's
entry notice, l. 56, makes clear.

63. skirt] scurry.

64. Assyrian slings] Cf. Judith ix. 7,
"The Assyrians...trust in shield,
speare, and bow, and sling".

68. According to Holinshed
Montjoy came to Henry in the
morning after the battle and not
on the same day.
That I have fin'd these bones of mine for ransom?
Com'st thou again for ransom?

Mont. No, great king:
I come to thee for charitable licence,
That we may wander o'er this bloody field
To book our dead, and then to bury them;
To sort our nobles from our common men;
For many of our princes—woe the while!—
Lie drown'd and soak'd in mercenary blood;
So do our vulgar drench their peasant limbs
In blood of princes; and their wounded steeds
Fret fetlock deep in gore, and with wild rage
Yerk out their armed heels at their dead masters,
Killing them twice. O, give us leave, great king,
To view the field in safety and dispose
Of their dead bodies!

K. Hen. I tell thee truly, herald,
I know not if the day be ours or no;
For yet a many of your horsemen peer
And gallop o'er the field.

Mont. The day is yours.
K. Hen. Praised be God, and not our strength, for it!
What is this castle call'd that stands hard by?

Mont. They call it Agincourt.
K. Hen. Then call we this the field of Agincourt,
Fought on the day of Crispin Crispianus.

Flu. Your grandfather of famous memory, an't please your majesty, and your great-uncle Edward the
Plack Prince of Wales, as I have read in the chronicles, fought a most prave pattle here in France.

*K. Hen.* They did, Fluellen.

*Flu.* Your majesty says very true: if your majesties 100 is remembered of it, the Welshmen did good service in a garden where leeks did grow, wearing leeks in their Monmouth caps; which, your majesty know, to this hour is an honourable badge of the service; and I do believe your 105 majesty takes no scorn to wear the leek upon Saint Tavy's day.

*K. Hen.* I wear it for a memorable honour;

For I am Welsh, you know, good countryman.

*Flu.* All the water in Wye cannot wash your majesty's 110 Welsh plood out of your body, I can tell you that: God pless it and preserve it, as long as it pleases his grace, and his majesty too!

*K. Hen.* Thanks, good my countryman.

*Flu.* By Jeshu, I am your majesty's countryman, I 115 care not who know it; I will confess it to all the 'orld: I need not to be ashamed of your majesty, praised be God, so long as your majesty is an honest man.

114. *countryman* F 2; *countrymen* F 1.

97. *a most prave pattle*] If Fluellen was thinking of Cressy, he should have said great-grandfather in l. 94 (i.e. Edward III). John of Gaunt, Henry's grandfather, was six years old at the time.

101-2. *Welshmen . . . grow*] "For the fact of service done by Welshmen in a garden of leeks, Fluellen remains our only authority" (Evans). The wearing of the leek on St. David's Day, 1st March, is usually supposed to commemorate a British victory over the Saxons on that day in A.D. 540.


105-7. *your majesty . . . day*] Dover Wilson quotes Moore Smith for a reference to Francis Osborne, *Works*, 8th ed. (1682), p. 610: "Nor did he [the Earl of Essex] fail to wear a Leek on St. David's day, but besides would upon all occasions vindicate the Welsh inhabitants, and own them for his Countreymen, as Q. Elizabeth usually was wont, upon the first of March."

113. *and his majesty too*] "Fluellen adds these words lest he should seem disrespectful to God by giving Him a title lower than that which he had just given to the King" (Moore Smith).
Enter Williams.

K. Hen. God keep me so! Our heralds go with him: bring me just notice of the numbers dead.
On both our parts. Call yonder fellow hither.

[Exeunt Heralds with Montjoy.

Exe. Soldier, you must come to the king.

K. Hen. Soldier, why wearest thou that glove in thy cap?

Will. An't please your majesty, 'tis the gage of one that I should fight withal, if he be alive.

K. Hen. An Englishman?

Will. An't please your majesty, a rascal that swaggered with me last night; who, if alive and ever dare to challenge this glove, I have sworn to take him a box o' th' ear: or if I can see my glove in his cap, which he swore as he was a soldier he would wear if alive, I will strike it out soundly.

K. Hen. What think you, Captain Fluellen? is it fit this soldier keep his oath?

Flu. He is a craven and a villain else, an't please your majesty, in my conscience.

K. Hen. It may be his enemy is a gentleman of great sort, quite from the answer of his degree.

Flu. Though he be as good a gentleman as the devil is, as Lucifer and Belzebub himself, it is necessary, look your grace, that he keep his vow and his oath. If he be perjured, see you now, his reputation is as arrant a villain and a Jack-sauce as ever his black shoe trod upon God's ground and his earth, in my conscience, la!

120. God] F 3; Good F 1. 122. Exeunt . . . Montjoy] added
Malone. 130. alive ] F; a' live Capell. 132. o' th'] F 4; a' th' F 1.
147. la] Capell; law F.

131. take] strike. 141-2. as good . . . ii] Cf. Lr. iii.
140. sort] rank, quality. iv. 138, "The Prince of Darkness is a gentleman"; i.e. of long and firmly established royalty, of the highest rank in hell.
K. Hen. Then keep thy vow, sirrah, when thou meetest the fellow.

Will. So I will, my liege, as I live.

K. Hen. Who servest thou under?

Will. Under Captain Gower, my liege.

Flu. Gower is a good captain, and is good knowledge, and literatured in the wars.

K. Hen. Call him hither to me, soldier.

Will. I will, my liege. [Exit.

K. Hen. Here, Fluellen; wear thou this favour for me and stick it in thy cap. When Alençon and myself were down together I plucked this glove from his helm: if any man challenge this, he is a friend to Alençon and an enemy to our person; if thou encounter any such, apprehend him, an thou dost me love.

Flu. Your grace doo's me as great honours as can be desired in the hearts of his subjects: I would fain see the man that has but two legs that shall find himself aggrieved at this glove, that is all; but I would fain see it once, and please God of his grace that I might see.

K. Hen. Knowest thou Gower?

Flu. He is my dear friend, an please you.

K. Hen. Pray thee, go seek him, and bring him to my tent.

Flu. I will fetch him. [Exit.

K. Hen. My Lord of Warwick, and my brother Gloucester,

Follow Fluellen closely at the heels.
The glove which I have given him for a favour
May haply purchase him a box o' th' ear;
It is the soldier's; I by bargain should
Wear it myself. Follow, good cousin Warwick:

If that the soldier strike him, as I judge

178. o' th' [F 4; o' th' F 1.


152. go seek him] Cf. 1. 155. In this way Henry arranges for Fluellen and Williams to meet.
By his blunt bearing he will keep his word,
Some sudden mischief may arise of it;
For I do know Fluellen valiant,
And touch'd with choler, hot as gunpowder,
And quickly will return an injury:
Follow and see there be no harm between them.
Go you with me, uncle of Exeter.                [Exeunt.

SCENE VIII.—Before King Henry's Pavilion.

Enter Gower and Williams.

Will. I warrant it is to knight you, captain.

Enter Fluellen.

Flu. God's will and his pleasure, captain, I beseech
you now come apace to the king: there is more
good toward you peradventure than is in your
knowledge to dream of.

Will. Sir, know you this glove?

Flu. Know the glove! I know the glove is a glove.

Will. I know this; and thus I challenge it.      [Strikes him.

Flu. 'Sblood! an arrant traitor as any's in the universal
world, or in France, or in England.

Gow. How now, sir! you villain!

Will. Do you think I'll be forsworn?

Flu. Stand away, Captain Gower: I will give treason
his payment into plows, I warrant you.

Will. I am no traitor.

Flu. That's a lie in thy throat. I charge you in his
majesty's name, apprehend him: he's a friend of
the Duke Alençon's.

Scene viii


Enter Warwick and Gloucester.

War. How now, how now! what's the matter?
Flu. My Lord of Warwick, here is, praised be God 20
for it! a most contagious treason come to light,
look you, as you shall desire in a summer's day.
Here is his majesty.

Enter King Henry and Exeter.

K. Hen. How now! what's the matter?
Flu. My liege, here is a villain and a traitor, that, 25
look your grace, has struck the glove which
your majesty is take out of the helmet of
Alençon.
Will. My liege, this was my glove; here is the fellow
of it; and he that I gave it to in change pro-
mised to wear it in his cap: I promised to strike
him if he did. I met this man with my glove in
his cap, and I have been as good as my word.
Flu. Your majesty hear now, saving your majesty's
manhood, what an arrant, rascally, beggarly,
ousy knave it is. I hope your majesty is pear
me testimony and witness, and will avouchment
that this is the glove of Alençon that your
majesty is give me; in your conscience now?
K. Hen. Give me thy glove, soldier: look, here is the 40
fellow of it.
'Twas I, indeed, thou promised'st to strike;
And thou hast given me most bitter terms.
Flu. An please your majesty, let his neck answer for
it, if there is any martial law in the world. 45
K. Hen. How canst thou make me satisfaction?
Will. All offences, my lord, come from the heart:
never came any from mine that might offend
your majesty.

22. as... day] as you could wish for. 37. avouchment] i.e. acknowledge.
23. King Henry] Rowe; King F. 40. Pope's arrangement; F
ivides after soldier. 45. martial] Pope; Marshall F.
K. Hen. It was ourself thou didst abuse.

Will. Your majesty came not like yourself: you appeared to me but as a common man; witness the night, your garments, your lowliness; and what your highness suffered under that shape, I beseech you, take it for your own fault and not mine: for had you been as I took you for, I made no offence; therefore, I beseech your highness, pardon me.

K. Hen. Here, uncle Exeter, fill this glove with crowns, And give it to this fellow. Keep it, fellow; And wear it for an honour in thy cap Till I do challenge it. Give him the crowns. And, captain, you must needs be friends with him.

Flu. By this day and this light, the fellow has mettle enough in his belly. Hold, there is twelve pence for you, and I pray you to serve God, and keep you out of prawls, and prabbles, and quarrels, and dissensions, and, I warrant you, it is the better for you.

Will. I will none of your money.

Flu. It is with a good will; I can tell you it will serve you to mend your shoes: come, wherefore should you be so pashful? your shoes is not so good: 'tis a good silling, I warrant you, or I will change it.

Enter an English Herald.

K. Hen. Now, herald, are the dead numbered?

Her. Here is the number of the slaughter'd French.

[Presenting a paper.

K. Hen. What prisoners of good sort are taken, uncle?

Exe. Charles Duke of Orleans, nephew to the king;

John Duke of Bourbon, and Lord Bouciqualt:

Of other lords and barons, knights and squires,

Full fifteen hundred, besides common men.


79. Bouciqualt] Theobald (ed. 2); Bouchiquald F.

77. sort] rank. 78-108. These lines are a very close paraphrase of Holinshed.
K. Hen. This note doth tell me of ten thousand French
That in the field lie slain: of princes, in this number,
And nobles bearing banners, there lie dead
One hundred twenty-six: added to these,
Of knights, esquires, and gallant gentlemen,
Eight thousand and four hundred; of the which
Five hundred were but yesterday dubb’d knights:
So that, in these ten thousand they have lost,
There are but sixteen hundred mercenaries;
The rest are princes, barons, lords, knights, squires,
And gentlemen of blood and quality.
The names of those their nobles that lie dead:
Charles Delabreth, high constable of France;
Jacques of Chatillon, admiral of France;
The master of the cross-bows, Lord Rambures;
Great Master of France, the brave Sir Guichard
Dauphin;
John Duke of Alençon; Anthony Duke of Brabant,
The brother to the Duke of Burgundy;
And Edward Duke of Bar: of lusty earls,
Grandpré and Roussi, Faulconbridge and Foix,
Beaumont and Marle, Vaudemont and Lestrale.
Here was a royal fellowship of death!
Where is the number of our English dead?

[Herald shows him another paper.

Edward the Duke of York, the Earl of Suffolk,
Sir Richard Ketly, Davy Gam, esquire;
None else of name; and of all other men
But five and twenty. O God, thy arm was here;

106. Davy Gam] David ap Llewellyn of Brecon, called Gam (i.e. squinting).
108. O God] Begins a fresh line in F; F 2, 3, 4 prefix it with "King".

101. Faulconbridge] Dover Wilson; Faulconbridge F.
104. Herald ... paper] added Capell.
108. F divides after twenty.

82. ten thousand French] So Hall and Holinshed. The latest estimate is 7,000 (Jacob).
84. banners] i.e. bearing coats-of-arms.
102. Lestrale] Holinshed gives the name as "Lestrake".
105. Earl of Suffolk] Michael de la Pole, b. 1394, succeeded to the earldom on his father’s death at the siege of Harfleur.
And not to us, but to thy arm alone,
Ascribe we all! When, without stratagem,
But in plain shock and even play of battle,
Was ever known so great and little loss
On one part and on th' other? Take it, God,
For it is none but thine!

Exe.
'Tis wonderful!
K. Hen. Come, go we in procession to the village:
And be it death proclaimed through our host
To boast of this or take that praise from God
Which is his only.
Flu. Is it not lawful, an please your majesty, to tell
how many is killed?
K. Hen. Yes, captain; but with this acknowledgment,
That God fought for us.
Flu. Yes, my conscience, he did us great good.
K. Hen. Do we all holy rites:
Let there be sung "Non nobis" and "Te Deum";
The dead with charity enclos'd in clay.
And then to Calais; and to England then;
Where ne'er from France arriv'd more happy men.

[Exeunt.

112-13. loss . . . other? Take] Pope; losse? . . . other, take F.
115. we] F 2; me F 1. 124. rites] Pope; Rights F. 127. Calais] Rowe; Callice F.

125. "Non nobis" and "Te Deum"] Holinshed, closely following Hall, states that Henry caused "his prelats and chapleins to sing this psalme: In exitu Israel de Aegypto, and commanded euerie man to kneele downe on the ground at this verse: Non nobis, Domine, non nobis, sed nominis tuo da gloriem. Which doone, he caused Te Deum, with certeine anthems to be soong." Noble points out that in the Vulgate "In exitu Israel" includes "Non nobis, Domine". Shakespeare, however, knowing that they were separate psalms in the Anglican Psalter, presents them in that form here.

126. The dead . . . clay] Dover Wilson refers to Stow's Annals, p. 351a for the source of this.
126. charity] i.e. Christian burial. Cf. iv. i. 144-5.
ACT V

Enter Chorus.

Vouchsafe to those that have not read the story,
That I may prompt them: and of such as have,
I humbly pray them to admit th' excuse
Of time, of numbers, and due course of things,
Which cannot in their huge and proper life
Be here presented. Now we bear the king
Toward Calais: grant him there; there seen,
Heave him away upon your winged thoughts
Athwart the sea. Behold, the English beach
Pales in the flood with men, with wives, and boys,
Whose shouts and claps out-voice the deep-mouth'd sea,
Which, like a mighty whiffler, 'fore the king
Seems to prepare his way: so let him land,

ACT V

Chorus


ACT V

Chorus

Five years pass between Agincourt
and the negotiations resulting in the
Treaty of Troyes described in this
act. While the Chorus depicts
Henry's return to Calais, his landing
at Dover, his entry into London, and
mentions the visit of the Emperor
Sigismund, it says nothing of Henry's
second campaign which began on
1 August 1417.

3-4. admit ... Of] "excuse us in
our treatment of" (Dover Wilson).
9-13. Behold ... way] Probably
based on Pseudo-Elmham, Vita, p. 71,
"Rege vero apud villam de
Dower in natalis soli patriam
applicant, reverencia debita &
occursu solenni populus innumerus
religiosorum virorum, ecclesiasticorum & secularium, tanti
principis congratulantes victorie, fes
tivis gaudii, processione devota,
graciarum accione multiplici, ipsius
felicem adventum celebrant &
honorant ... ipsique de portibus
burgenses ad regem in terram suis
brachiiis deportandum, profundi
pelagi latices prae gaudio non
horrentes, usque ad regis cimbam
per medium fluctuum devenerunt."
12. whiffler] "one of a body of
attendants armed with javelin, battle
axe, sword, or staff, and wearing a
chain, employed to keep the way
clear for a procession" (O.E.D.).

136
And solemnly see him set on to London,
So swift a pace hath thought that even now
You may imagine him upon Blackheath;
Where that his lords desire him to have borne
His bruised helmet and his bended sword
Before him through the city: he forbids it,
Being free from vainness and self-glorious pride;
Giving full trophy, signal and ostent,
Quite from himself, to God. But now behold,
In the quick forge and working-house of thought,
How London doth pour out her citizens.
The mayor and all his brethren in best sort,
Like to the senators of th' antique Rome,
With the plebeians swarming at their heels,
Go forth and fetch their conqu'ring Cesar in:
As, by a lower but by loving likelihood,
Were now the general of our gracious empress,
As in good time he may, from Ireland coming,
Bringing rebellion broached on his sword,
How many would the peaceful city quit
To welcome him! much more, and much more
cause,
Did they this Harry. Now in London place him;
As yet the lamentation of the French
Invites the King of England's stay at home;

29. lower, but by loving] F; lower but loving Camb. after Seymour.

18. See iv. vi. 5 note.
23. quick forge] Thought was associated with the elements air and fire. Dover Wilson compares 2H4 iv. iii. 107-8, "quick, forgetful, full of nimble fiery and delectable shapes".
25. sort] array.
29. As . . . likelihood] as by a humbler but lovingly anticipated possibility.
30. the . . . empress] An allusion to the expedition commanded by Robert Devereux, Earl of Essex, which left England on 27 March, 1599, to suppress Tyrone's rebellion in Ireland. He returned in September unsuccessful and in disgrace. Dover Wilson notes the "skill and caution" of this compliment: "after the reference to Caesar to call Elizabeth 'empress' puts Essex neatly in his place."
32. broached] spitted.
34-41. These lines are awkward and clumsy and corruption has been suspected.
36-7. As yet . . . home] as the French are still occupied in mourning their defeat, Henry has no reason to leave England.
The emperor's coming in behalf of France,
To order peace between them; and omit
All the occurrences, whatever chanc'd,
Till Harry's back-return again to France:
There must we bring him; and myself have play'd
The interim, by remembering you 'tis past.
Then brook abridgement, and your eyes advance,
After your thoughts, straight back again to France.  

[Exit.

SCENE I.—France.  The English Camp.

Enter Fluellen and Gower.

Gow. Nay, that's right; but why wear you your leek

to-day?  Saint Davy's day is past.

Flu. There is occasions and causes why and wherefore

in all things: I will tell you, asse my friend,

Captain Gower.  The rascally, scauld, beggarly,

lousy, pragging knave, Pistol, which you and your-

self and all the world know to be no petter than

a fellow, look you now, of no merits, he is come
to me and prings me pread and salt yesterday,

look you, and bid me eat my leek.  It was in a

place where I could not breed no contention with

him; but I will be so bold as to wear it in my
cap till I see him once again, and then I will tell

him a little piece of my desires.

Enter Pistol.

Gow. Why, here he comes, swelling like a turkey-

cock.

Scene 1


38. The emperor's coming] The Holy
Roman Emperor Sigismund came to
England on 1 May 1416.

5. scauld] scurvy, scabby.

9. yesterday] Presumably St. David's
day.
Flu. 'Tis no matter for his swellings nor his turkey-cocks. God pless you, Aunchient Pistol! you scurvy, lousy knave, God pless you!

Pist. Ha! art thou bedlam? dost thou thirst, base Trojan

To have me fold up Parca's fatal web?
Hence! I am qualmish at the smell of leek.

Flu. I peseech you heartily, scurvy lousy knave, at my desires and my requests and my petitions to eat, look you, this leek; because, look you, you do not love it, nor your affections and your appetites and your digestions doo's not agree with it, I would desire you to eat it.

Pist. Not for Cadwallader and all his goats.

Flu. There is one goat for you. [Strikes him] Will you be so good, scauld knave, as eat it?

Pist. Base Trojan, thou shalt die.

Flu. You say very true, scauld knave, when God's will is. I will desire you to live in the mean time and eat your victuals: come, there is sauce for it. [Strikes him.] You called me yesterday mountain-squire, but I will make you to-day a squire of low degree. I pray you, fall to: if you can mock a leek you can eat a leek.

Gow. Enough, captain: you have astonished him.

Flu. I say, I will make him eat some part of my leek, or I will peat his pate four days. Bite, I pray


19. bedlam] mad. A corruption of Bethlehem, the name of a hospital for lunatics in London.

20. Trojan] a slang term for a person of low character.


21. Parca] i.e. Parcae, the three Fates who, in classical legend, wove the web of a man's destiny cutting off the thread when the pattern was completed and so ending his life.

29. Cadwallader] The last of the British kings, also the ancestor of Queen Elizabeth.

29. goats] a term of contempt associated with Wales.


37-8. squire of low degree] (a) a quibble on low in contrast with "mountain." l. 36, (b) a reference to the title of a medieval metrical romance.

40. astonished] beaten into submission.
you; it is good for your green wound and your ploody coxcomb.

**Pist.** Must I bite?

**Flu.** Yes, certainly, and out of doubt and out of question too and ambiguities.

**Pist.** By this leek, I will most horribly revenge. I eat and eat, I swear—

**Flu.** Eat, I pray you. Will you have some more sauce to your leek? there is not enough leek to swear by.

**Pist.** Quiet thy cudgel; thou dost see I eat.

**Flu.** Much good do you, scauld knave, heartily. Nay, pray you, throw none away; the skin is good for your broken coxcomb. When you take occasions to see leeks hereafter, I pray you, mock at 'em; that is all.

**Pist.** Good.

**Flu.** Ay, leeks is good. Hold you, there is a groat to heal your pate.

**Pist.** Me a groat!

**Flu.** Yes, verily and in truth, you shall take it; or I have another leek in my pocket, which you shall eat.

**Pist.** I take thy groat in earnest of revenge.

**Flu.** If I owe you any thing I will pay you in cudgels: you shall be a woodmonger, and buy nothing of me but cudgels. God bye you, and keep you, and heal your pate.

**Pist.** All hell shall stir for this.

**Gow.** Go, go; you are a counterfeit cowardly knave. Will you mock at an ancient tradition, begun upon an honourable respect, and worn as a

---

48-9. *revenge... swear—* Camb.; *revenge I eate and eate I sweare.* F, Dover Wilson. 69. *bye* Moore Smith; *bu'y F.* 73. *begun* Capell; *began F.*

43. *green* raw.

48-9. *By... swear* Simpson, *Shakespearean Punctuation,* p. 12, defends the F punctuation on the grounds that the cudgel supplies a very satisfactory dramatic punctuation. Dover Wilson follows F.

54. *do you* may it do you.

62. *Me a groat!* Pistol is offended at the offer of fourpence.

74. *respect* reason, consideration.
memorable trophy of predeceased valour, and dare not avouch in your deeds any of your words? I have seen you gleeking and galling at this gentleman twice or thrice. You thought, because he could not speak English in the native garb, he could not therefore handle an English cudgel: you find it otherwise; and henceforth let a Welsh correction teach you a good English condition. Fare ye well.

[Exit.

Pist. Doth Fortune play the huswife with me now? News have I that my Doll is dead i' the spital Of malady of France; And there my rendezvous is quite cut off. Old I do wax, and from my weary limbs Honour is cudgelled. Well, bawd I'll turn, And something lean to cut-purse of quick hand. To England will I steal, and there I'll steal: And patches will I get unto these cudgell'd scars, And swear I got them in the Gallia wars.

[Exit.


75. predeceased valour] Cf. iv. vii. 102.

77. gleeking] mocking.

77. galling] jeering.

84. huswife] hussy.


85. spital] hospital.

86. malady of France] venereal disease.

87. rendezvous] Cf. 1H4 iv. i. 57, "A rendezvous, a home to fly unto".

90. And . . . to] with a leaning towards the profession of.

92-3. And . . . wars] One of the "slanders of the age". Cf. iii. vi. 68-83.
SCENE II.—Troyes in Champagne. An Apartment in the French King’s Palace.

Enter, at one door, King Henry, Exeter, Bedford, Gloucester, Warwick, Westmoreland, and other Lords; at another, the French King, Queen Isabel, the Princess Katharine, Alice, and other Ladies, the Duke of Burgundy, and his Train.

K. Hen. Peace to this meeting, wherefore we are met! Unto our brother France, and to our sister, Health and fair time of day; joy and good wishes To our most fair and princely cousin Katharine; And, as a branch and member of this royalty, By whom this great assembly is contriv’d, We do salute you, Duke of Burgundy; And, princes French, and peers, health to you all!

Fr. King. Right joyous are we to behold your face, Most worthy brother England; fairly met: So are you, princes English, every one.

Q. Isa. So happy be the issue, brother England, Of this good day and of this gracious meeting, As we are now glad to behold your eyes; Your eyes, which hitherto have borne in them Against the French, that met them in their bent, The fatal balls of murdering basilisks: The venom of such looks, we fairly hope,

Scene ii

The events of this scene took place in May, 1420.

1. Peace . . . met] “Peace, for which we are here met, be to this meeting” (Johnson).

12. England] F “Ireland” suggests that the manuscript spelling was “Ingland”.

16. bent] (a) glance, (b) line of fire.

17. balls] (a) cannon balls, (b) eyeballs.

17. basilisks] (a) large cannon, (b) mythical serpents that slew by a glance of their eyes. They were supposedly hatched by a serpent from the eggs of a cockerel.
Have lost their quality, and that this day
Shall change all griefs and quarrels into love.

K. Hen. To cry amen to that, thus we appear.

Q. Isa. You English princes all, I do salute you.

Bur. My duty to you both, on equal love,
Great Kings of France and England! That I have
labour'd
With all my wits, my pains, and strong endeavours,
To bring your most imperial majesties
Unto this bar and royal interview,
Your mightiness on both parts best can witness.
Since then my office hath so far prevail'd
That face to face, and royal eye to eye,
You have congreed, let it not disgrace me
If I demand before this royal view,
What rub or what impediment there is,
Why that the naked, poor, and mangled Peace,
Dear nurse of arts, plenties, and joyful births,
Should not in this best garden of the world, Our fertile France, put up her lovely visage?
Alas! she hath from France too long been chas'd, And all her husbandry doth lie on heaps, Corrupting in it own fertility.
Her vine, the merry cheerer of the heart, Unpruned dies; her hedges even-pleach'd,

19. have] plural by attraction to "looks".
19. quality] power.
23. on] based on, arising from.
24-8. After the murder of John the Fearless, Duke of Burgundy, by the Dauphin, Philip his son came to terms with Henry and an alliance was made between them in December 1419. Henry made it clear what his ultimate aims were, and to these Philip agreed.
27. bar] place for judgement.
31. congreed] exchanged greetings. Cf. 1. ii. 182, "congreeing".
33. rub] obstacle. See note to ii. ii. 188.
33-62. Noble draws attention to a general resemblance between these lines and Isa. xxxii. 10-20.
40. it] its. The usual genitive form of "it" was "his", but Shakespeare occasionally uses the form "it". Cf. Tp. ii. i. 163, "of its own kind".
41. Her vine . . . heart] Cf. Ps. civ. 15, "wine that maketh glad the heart of man", and Judges ix, "And the vine said unto them, Should I leave my wine, which cheereth God and man?"
42. even-pleach'd] evenly layered. Trimmed with branches partly cut through and intertwined to form a compact hedge. The word "plash" with this meaning is still found in Lincolnshire dialect. Cf. Aiso, i. ii. 11, "thick-pleached".
Like prisoners wildly overgrown with hair,
Put forth disorder'd twigs; her fallow leas
The darnel, hemlock and rank fumitory
Doth root upon, while that the coulter rusts
That should deracinate such savagery;
The even mead, that erst brought sweetly forth
The freckled cowslip, burnet, and green clover,
Wanting the scythe, all uncorrected, rank,
Conceives by idleness, and nothing teems
But hateful docks, rough thistles, kecksies, burrs,
Losing both beauty and utility.
And as our vineyards, fallows, meads, and hedges,
Defective in their natures, grow to wildness,
Even so our houses and ourselves and children
Have lost, or do not learn for want of time,
The sciences that should become our country,
But grow like savages, as soldiers will
That nothing do but meditate on blood,
To swearing and stern looks, diffus'd attire,

45. fumitory] F 4; Femitory F 1.
50. all] Rowe (ed. 3); withall F.
54-5. as ... wildness] Capell; all ... wildness F.
61. diffus'd] F 3;
defus'd F 1.

44. fallow leas] arable land lying unsown.
45. darnel] ryegrass.
45. darnel ... fumitory] Shakespeare's accurate observation is supported by modern text-books on British Flora, where both darnel and fumitory are described as "weeds of cultivation", i.e. they grow most prolifically on cultivated land. Cf. Lr. iv. iv. 3-6,
"Crown'd with rank fumiter and furrow weeds,
With burdocks, hemlock, nettles, cuckoo-flowers,
Darnel, and all the idle weeds
that grow
In our sustaining corn."
46. coulter] the knife that precedes the ploughshare.
51. Conceives by idleness] Cf. the proverb "Idleness is the mother of vice".
51. nothing teems] produces nothing.
52. kecksies] kexes. The dry hollow stems of various plants such as hemlock or alexanders. Here possibly the plants themselves.
54-5. as] Capell's emendation is clearly right since these lines summarize ll. 40-53 to form a comparison with ll. 56-62.
55. Defective ... wildness] At the Fall all the natural world degenerated with man and became corrupt (see Perkins, Works, 1619, III. 575). "Elizabethan thought conceived of cultivation, culture, civilization as attempts to restore 'nature' to its pristine excellence" (Dover Wilson).
56. houses] households.
60. meditate on blood] Cf. rv. i. 145-6, "when blood is their argument".
61. diffus'd] disordered.
And every thing that seems unnatural.
Which to reduce into our former favour
You are assembled; and my speech entreats
That I may know the let, why gentle Peace
Should not expel these inconveniences,
And bless us with her former qualities.

K. Hen. If, Duke of Burgundy, you would the peace,
Whose want gives growth to th’ imperfections
Which you have cited, you must buy that peace
With full accord to all our just demands;
Whose tenours and particular effects
You have, enschedul’d briefly, in your hands.

Bur. The king hath heard them; to the which as yet
There is no answer made.

K. Hen. Well then the peace,
Which you before so urg’d, lies in his answer.

Fr. King. I have but with a cursitory eye
O’erglanc’d the articles: pleaseth your grace
To appoint some of your council presently
To sit with us once more, with better heed
To re-survey them, we will suddenly
Pass our accept and peremptory answer.

K. Hen. Brother, we shall. Go, uncle Exeter,
And brother Clarence, and you, brother Gloucester,
Warwick and Huntingdon, go with the king;
And take with you free power to ratify,

68. Burgundy J Rowe; Burgonie F.
75-6. F divides after made, urg’d.
77. cursitory] Dover Wilson; curselerie F; cursoralie Q 3, Pope.
81. re-survey] re-survey F.

63. reduce] lead back, return.
63. favour] appearance.
65. let] hindrance.
68. would] desire.
72. tenours] general trends. The F spelling “Tenures” is a normal variant.
77. cursitory] Dover Wilson notes that “cursory” the Q 3 reading is “not found elsewhere in English, whereas ‘cursitory’ or ‘cursatory’ (of which F is an obvious misp.) is a
recognized seventeenth century word = cursory “.
82. Pass . . . answer] formally pronounce our agreed and final reply.
82. Pass] give, usually associated with undertaking, promise, assurance or similar word. Cf. Tit. 1. i. 468-9.
82. accept] accepted (see O.E.D.).
82. peremptory] decisive, final. The pairing of this word with “accept” is interesting, since L “emere” from which peremptory is derived is normally defined by “accipere”. 
Augment, or alter, as your wisdoms best
Shall see advantageable for our dignity,
Any thing in or out of our demands,
And we'll consign thereto. Will you, fair sister, 90
Go with the princes, or stay here with us?

Q. Isa. Our gracious brother, I will go with them.
Haply a woman's voice may do some good
When articles too nicely urg'd be stood on.

K. Hen. Yet leave our cousin Katharine here with us: 95
She is our capital demand, compris'd
Within the fore-rank of our articles.

Q. Isa. She hath good leave.

[Exeunt all but King Henry, Katharine, and Alice.

K. Hen. Fair Katharine, and most fair,
Will you vouchsafe to teach a soldier terms
Such as will enter at a lady's ear
And plead his love-suit to her gentle heart?

Kath. Your majesty shall mock at me; I cannot speak your England.

K. Hen. O fair Katharine! if you will love me soundly
with your French heart, I will be glad to hear you confess it brokenly with your English tongue.
Do you like me, Kate?

Kath. Pardonnez-moi, I cannot tell wat is "like me."

K. Hen. An angel is like you, Kate, and you are like an angel.

Kath. Qui dit-il? que je suis semblable à un ange?

Alice. Oui, vraiment, sauf votre grace, ainsi dit-il.

K. Hen. I said so, dear Katharine, and I must not blush to affirm it.


94. When . . . on] when minutely argued trivialities are insisted upon.

98-298. For the wooling scene in the Famous Victories see Appendix, p. 165. These scenes may have arisen from a very early tradition. Jacob, p. 158, refers to a contempor-
Kath. O bon Dieu! les langues des hommes sont 115
pleines de tromperies.

K. Hen. What says she, fair one? that the tongues of
men are full of deceits?

Alice. Oui; dat de tongues of de mans is be full of
decieis: dat is de princess.

K. Hen. The princess is the better Englishwoman.
I' faith, Kate, my wooing is fit for thy under-
standing; I am glad thou canst speak no better
English; for if thou couldst, thou wouldst find
me such a plain king that thou wouldst think I
had sold my farm to buy my crown. I know
no ways to mince it in love, but directly to
say, "I love you": then if you urge me farther
than to say, "Do you in faith?" I wear out
my suit. Give me your answer; i' faith, do: 130
and so clap hands and a bargain. How say
you, lady?

Kath. Sauf votre honneur, me understand well.

K. Hen. Marry, if you would put me to verses, or to
dance for your sake, Kate, why you undid me: 135
for the one, I have neither words nor measure,
and for the other, I have no strength in measure,
yet a reasonable measure in strength. If I could
win a lady at leap-frog, or by vaulting into my
saddle with my armour on my back, under the
140
correction of bragging be it spoken, I should
quickly leap into a wife. Or if I might buffet
for my love, or bound my horse for her favours,
I could lay on like a butcher and sit like a jack-
an-apes, never off. But, before God, Kate, I

116. pleines] Pope; plein F.

120. dat . . . princess] that is what
the princess says.

121. The princess . . . Englishwoman
i.e. because she sees through flattery.

131. clap hands] join hands to seal
an agreement.

137. I . . . measure] I am not
good at treading a measure, i.e. dancing.

2139. vaulting] F 3; vaulting F 1.

139-40. by vaulting . . . back] Cf.
1H4 iv. i. 104-10.

142. leap into] achieve, win. Equi-
vocal.

144-5. sit . . . off] sit like a monkey
on horseback, so tightly as not to be
thrown off.

144-5. jack-an-apes] monkey (see
O.E.D.).
cannot look greenly nor gasp out my eloquence, nor I have no cunning in protestation; only downright oaths, which I never use till urged, nor never break for urging. If thou canst love a fellow of this temper, Kate, whose face is not worth sun-burning, 150 that never looks in his glass for love of any thing he sees there, let thine eye be thy cook. I speak to thee plain soldier: if thou canst love me for this, take me; if not, to say to thee that I shall die, is true; but for thy love, by the Lord, no; yet I love thee too. And while thou livest, dear Kate, take a fellow of plain and uncoined constancy, for he perforce must do thee right, because he hath not the gift to woo in other places; for these fellows of infinite tongue, that can rhyme themselves into ladies' favours, they do always reason themselves out again. What! a speaker is but a prater; a rhyme is but a ballad. A good leg will fall, a straight back will stoop, a black beard will turn white, a curled pate will grow bald, a fair face will wither, a full eye will wax hollow; but a good heart, Kate, is the sun and the moon; or rather the sun, and not the moon; for it shines bright and never changes, but keeps his course truly. If thou would have such a one, take me; 170 and take me, take a soldier; take a soldier, take a king. And what sayest thou then to my love? speak, my fair, and fairly, I pray thee.

146. look greenly] look sheepishly.
150. not ... sun-burning] "so ugly that the sun cannot make it more so" (Dover Wilson). Cf. Troil. i. iii. 281-2, "The Grecian dames are sun-burnt, and not worth the splinter of a lance". A sunburnt face was considered unbecoming.
152. thine eye ... cook] let your eye present me more attractively than I am.
157. uncoined] not minted and therefore not in circulation (among the ladies).
163. but a ballad] Ballads were extremely popular among the Elizabethans, but were despised by the judicious. Thus in I Return from Parnassus, Luxurio plans to forsake the poverty of Parnassus for the plenty of ballad-making: "To London Ie goe, for there is a great nosde ballet-maker deceaste, & I am promised to be the rimer of the citie" (ll. 412-15).
Kath. Is it possible dat I sou'd love de enemy of France?

K. Hen. No; it is not possible you should love the enemy of France, Kate; but, in loving me, you should love the friend of France, for I love France so well that I will not part with a village of it; I will have it all mine: and Kate, when France is mine and I am yours, then yours is France and you are mine.

Kath. I cannot tell wat is dat.

K. Hen. No, Kate? I will tell thee in French, which I am sure will hang upon my tongue like a new married wife about her husband’s neck, hardly to be shook off. Je quand sur le possession de France, et quand vous avez le possession de moi —let me see, what then? Saint Denis be my speed!—donc votre est France, et vous êtes mienne. It is as easy for me, Kate, to conquer the kingdom as to speak so much more French: I shall never move thee in French, unless it be to laugh at me.

Kath. Sauf votre honneur, le Français que vous parlez il est meilleur que l’Anglais lequel je parle.

K. Hen. No, faith, is’t not, Kate; but thy speaking of my tongue, and I thine, most truly-falsely, must needs be granted to be much at one. But, Kate, dost thou understand thus much English? Canst thou love me?

Kath. I cannot tell.

K. Hen. Can any of your neighbours tell, Kate? I’ll ask them. Come, I know thou lovest me: and at night, when you come into your closet, you’ll question this gentlewoman about me; and I know,

196. il est] Pope; il & F. meilleur] Hamner; melius F.

174-5. Is it ... France?] Cf. Famous Victories, Sig. G2f, “How should I love thee, which is my fathers enmye?”

Kate, you will to her dispraise those parts in me that you love with your heart: but, good Kate, mock me mercifully; the rather, gentle princess, because I love thee cruelly. If ever thou beest mine, Kate, as I have a saving faith within me tells me thou shalt, I get thee with scambling, and thou must therefore needs prove a good soldier-breeder. Shall not thou and I, between Saint Denis and Saint George, compound a boy, half French, half English, that shall go to Constantinople and take the Turk by the beard? shall we not? what sayest thou, my fair flower de-luce?

Kath. I do not know dat.

K. Hen. No; 'tis hereafter to know, but now to promise: do but now promise, Kate, you will endeavour for your French part of such a boy, and for my English moiety take the word of a king and a bachelor. How answer you, la plus belle Katharine du monde, mon très cher et divin déesse?

Kath. Your majesté 'ave fause French enough to deceive de most sage damoiselle dat is en France.

K. Hen. Now, fie upon my false French. By mine honour, in true English, I love thee, Kate: by which honour I dare not swear thou lovest me; yet my blood begins to flatter me that thou dost, notwithstanding the poor and untempering effect

212. saving faith] Cf. 1 Pet. i. 9, "the end of faith, the salvation of your souls", and Luke vii. 50, "Thy faith hath saved thee".

213. scambling] See i. i. 4.

216-18. compound a boy . . . beard] Ironically Henry VI.

217-18. Constantinople] Actually not captured by the Turks until 1453, thirty-one years after Henry's death. The Turks were active in their attacks on Christendom during the sixteenth century, and the expressed wish of all Christian kings was to recapture Constantinople. Cf. Daniel, Civil Wars, II. 126-7, where Daniel laments that if only Henry V's claim had been lawful, Essex would now have led England's armies against "the Eastern Powres".

227-8. mon . . . déesse] Presumably some of Henry's "fausse French" (Dr. Packer).

235. untempering] "without power to soften a lady's heart" (Moore Smith). Cf. ii. ii. 118.
of my visage. Now beshrew my father's ambition! he was thinking of civil wars when he got me: therefore was I created with a stubborn outside, with an aspect of iron, that when I come to woo ladies I fright them. But, in faith, Kate, the elder I wax the better I shall appear: my comfort is, that old age, that ill layer-up of beauty, can do no more spoil upon my face: thou hast me, if thou hast me, at the worst; and thou shalt wear me, if thou wear me, better and better. And therefore tell me, most fair Katharine, will you have me? Put off your maiden blushes; avouch the thoughts of your heart with the looks of an empress; take me by the hand, and say, "Harry of England, I am thine": which word thou shalt no sooner bless mine ear withal, but I will tell thee aloud, "England is thine, Ireland is thine, France is thine, and Henry Plantagenet is thine"; who, though I speak it before his face, if he be not fellow with the best king, thou shalt find the best king of good fellows. Come, your answer in broken music; for thy voice is music, and thy English broken; therefore, queen of all, Katharine, break thy mind to me in broken English: wilt thou have me?

Kath. Dat is as it shall please de roi mon père.
K. Hen. Nay, it will please him well, Kate; it shall please him, Kate.
Kath. Den it sall also content me.
K. Hen. Upon that I kiss your hand, and I call you my queen.

242. ill layer-up] ill - preserver, wrinkler. Cf. 2H4, v. i. 93-4, "you shall see him laugh till his face be like a wet cloak ill laid up ".
244. wear] possess and enjoy as one's own. Cf. Aoe, v. i. 82.
256. king of good fellows] Part of the proverb "The king of good fellows is appointed for the queen of beggars" (Ox. Dict. Prox., p. 337.) The French, of course, were begging for peace.
257. broken music] music arranged in parts to be played by different instruments.
259. break] open. Cf. 1H4 i. iii. 82, "But we shall meet, and break our minds at large ".
265. The episode of the kiss is probably based on Pseudo-Elmham, Vita, p. 222.
At their first meeting Henry kissed Katharine, whereupon "virgo,
Kath. Laissez, mon seigneur, laissez, laissez! Ma foi, je ne veux point que vous abaissiez votre grandeur, en baisant la main d’une de votre seigneurie indigne serviteur: excusez-moi, je vous supplie, 270 mon très puissant seigneur.

K. Hen. Then I will kiss your lips, Kate.

Kath. Les dames et demoiselles, pour être baisées devant leur noces, il n’est pas la coutume de France.

K. Hen. Madam my interpreter, what says she?

Alice. Dat it is not be de fashion pour les ladies of France—I cannot tell wat is baiser in Anglish.

K. Hen. To kiss.

Alice. Your majesty entendre bettre que moi.

K. Hen. It is not a fashion for the maids in France to kiss before they are married, would she say?

Alice. Oui, vraiment.

K. Hen. O Kate! nice customs curtsy to great kings.

Dear Kate, you and I cannot be confined within 285 the weak list of a country’s fashion: we are the makers of manners, Kate; and the liberty that follows our places stops the mouth of all find-faults, as I will do yours, for upholding the nice fashion of your country in denying me a kiss: 290 therefore, patiently and yielding. [Kissing her.] You have witchcraft in your lips, Kate: there is more eloquence in a sugar touch of them than in the tongues of the French council; and they

pax a justicia sumens oscula, virginales vultus exuere nasciens, mox castissimam faciem roseo coepit rubore perfundi, ac omni gestu virgineo suae virginitatis insignia demonstrare".

274. noces] the F "nopces" is an older form of the word.

278. Anglish] Surely preserves Alice's pronunciation.

284. nic] fastidious.

286. list] barriers.

287-8. that follows our places] that royalty is permitted.
should sooner persuade Harry of England than a 295
general petition of monarchs. Here comes your
father.

Re-enter the French King, Queen, and French Lords;
Burgundy, Exeter, Westmoreland and English Lords.

Bur. God save your majesty! My royal cousin, teach
you your princess English?

K. Hen. I would have her learn, my fair cousin, 300
how perfectly I love her; and that is good English.

Bur. Is she not apt?

K. Hen. Our tongue is rough, coz, and my condition
is not smooth; so that, having neither the voice 305
nor the heart of flattery about me, I cannot so
conjure up the spirit of love in her, that he will
appear in his true likeness.

Bur. Pardon the frankness of my mirth if I answer
you for that. If you would conjure in her, you 310
must make a circle; if conjure up love in her in
his true likeness, he must appear naked and blind.
Can you blame her then, being a maid yet rosed
over with the virgin crimson of modesty, if she
deny the appearance of a naked blind boy in 315
her naked seeing self? It were, my lord, a hard
condition for a maid to consign to.

K. Hen. Yet they do wink and yield, as love is blind
and enforces.

Bur. They are then excused, my lord, when they see 320
not what they do.

Lords F.

294-6. they . . . monarchs] Cf. Famous Victories, Sig. F3v,
"For none in the world could
sooner haue made me debate
it,"
and Sig. F4r,
"none in the world could sooner
haue perswaded me to It then
thou."
304. condition] disposition, temperament.
24-6.
318. blind] lustful (Dover Wilson).
K. Hen. Then, good my lord, teach your cousin to consent winking.

Bur. I will wink on her to consent, my lord, if you will teach her to know my meaning: for maids, 325 well summered, and warm kept, are like flies at Bartholomew-tide, blind, though they have their eyes; and then they will endure handling, which before would not abide looking on.

K. Hen. This moral ties me over to time and a hot 330 summer; and so I shall catch the fly, your cousin, in the latter end, and she must be blind too.

Bur. As love is, my lord, before it loves.

K. Hen. It is so: and you may, some of you, thank love for my blindness, who cannot see many a 335 fair French city for one fair French maid that stands in my way.

Fr. King. Yes, my lord, you see them prospectively, the cities turned into a maid; for they are all girdled with maiden walls that war hath never 340 entered.

K. Hen. Shall Kate be my wife?

Fr. King. So please you.

K. Hen. I am content; so the maiden cities you talk of may wait on her: so the maid that stood in 345 the way for my wish shall show me the way to my will.

Fr. King. We have consented to all terms of reason.

K. Hen. Is't so, my lords of England?

West. The king hath granted every article: 350

His daughter first, and then in sequel all,

According to their firm proposed natures.

332. too] F 2; to F 1. 340. never] added Rowe. 351. then]

added F 2.

326. well summered . . . kept] well nurtured and delicately reared.

326. summered] i.e. pastured, grazed in pastures rich with summer growth.

326-8. like flies . . . eyes] Like flies sluggish in the colder weather of late August.


330. This . . . over] This kind of argument restricts me.

338. prospectively] through a glass so cut to produce a picture from a confused pattern, or like a picture so devised to give different views from different angles.

344-5. so . . . her] as long as she brings these cities as a dowry.
Exe. Only he hath not yet subscribed this:
Where your majesty demands, that the King of
France, having any occasion to write for matter 355
of grant, shall name your highness in this form, and
with this addition in French, Notre très cher
filz Henry, Roy d'Angleterre, Héritier de France;
and thus in Latin, Præclarissimus filius noster
Henricus, Rex Angliae, et Hæres Franciae.

Fr. King. Nor this I have not, brother, so denied,
But your request shall make me let it pass.

K. Hen. I pray you then, in love and dear alliance,
Let that one article rank with the rest;
And thereupon give me your daughter.

Fr. King. Take her, fair son; and from her blood raise
up
Issue to me; that the contending kingdoms
Of France and England, whose very shores look pale
With envy of each other's happiness,
May cease their hatred, and this dear conjunction 370
Plant neighbourhood and Christian-like accord
In their sweet bosoms, that never war advance
His bleeding sword 'twixt England and fair France.

All. Amen.

K. Hen. Now welcome, Kate: and bear me witness all, 375
That here I kiss her as my sovereign queen.

[Flourish.

Q. Isa. God, the best maker of all marriages,
Combine your hearts in one, your realms in one!
As man and wife, being two, are one in love,
So be there 'twixt your kingdoms such a spousal 380
That never may ill office, or fell jealousy,

374. All] Rowe; Lords F.

354-60. This follows Holinshed closely. See Appendix, p. 163.
355-6. for . . . gran] in any matter connected with grants of land or titles.
359. Præclarissimus] Hall has "praecarissimus", a form of the correct "praecarissimus", but in the edition of 1550 it is misprinted as "praeclarissimus". Holinshed repeats the error from Hall (1550) and Shakespeare follows Holinshed.
368. pale] i.e. because of the white cliffs.
370. dear conjunction] solemn union.
Cf. ii. ii. 181, "dear offences".
371. neighbourhood] neighbourliness.
Cf. i. ii 154.
381. office] dealing, acts.
Which troubles oft the bed of blessed marriage,
Thrust in between the paction of these kingdoms,
To make divorce of their incorporate league;
That English may as French, French Englishmen, 385
Receive each other! God speak this Amen!

All. Amen.

K. Hen. Prepare we for our marriage: on which day,
My Lord of Burgundy, we’ll take your oath,
And all the peers’, for surety of our leagues. 390
Then shall I swear to Kate, and you to me;
And may our oaths well kept and prosperous be!

[Sennet. Exeunt.

Enter Chorus.

Thus far, with rough and all-unable pen,
Our bending author hath pursu’d the story;
In little room confining mighty men,
Mangling by starts the full course of their glory.
Small time, but in that small most greatly liv’d 5
This star of England: Fortune made his sword,
By which the world’s best garden he achiev’d,
And of it left his son imperial lord.
Henry the Sixth, in infant bands crown’d King
Of France and England, did this king succeed; 10
Whose state so many had the managing,

383. paction] Theobald; Pation F 1; Passion F 3.
Capell; Peeres F.

383. paction] compact.

389-90. we’ll ... leagues] So Hall and Holinshed. In Famous Victories, Sig. Gk, the Dauphin and Burgundy take the oath on the stage. In the play mentioned by Nashe both the French king and the Dauphin swear fealty (see Introduction, p. xxxvii), though Nashe may not be reporting accurately.

392. Sennet] a set of trumpet notes sounded at the entrance or exit of a procession.

Chorus

Note that this epilogue is a regular Shakespearian sonnet.

2. bending] i.e. “stooping to your clemency”, Ham. iii. ii. 160 (Steevens).

4. by starts] by arbitrary selection or omission.

7. world’s best garden] Cf. v. ii. 36.
That they lost France and made his England bleed:
Which oft our stage hath shown; and, for their sake,
In your fair minds let this acceptance take.

[Exit.

Chorus


19. Oft . . . shown] If, as seems likely, 1 Henry VI is the play referred to by Henslowe, Diary, ed. Greg, I. 13–15, and Nashe, Pierce Pennilesse (Works, ed. McKerrow, I. 212), it was an extremely popular play.

14. this] this play.
APPENDIX I

EXTRACTS FROM HOLINSHED’S CHRONICLES, 1587

Only a selection of extracts can be given here; for a comprehensive collection the reader is referred to W. G. Boswell-Stone, Shakespeare’s Holinshed, 1896. Comments are added to show the relationship of each passage with Hall’s Union of the Two Noble Families, 1548. The passages enclosed in square brackets do not occur in those words in Hall.

1. i. 1-19 [Holinshed, III. 545].

[In the second yeare of his reign], king Henrie called his high court of parlement, the last daie of Aprill in the towne of Leicester, in which parlement manie profitable lawes were concluded, and manie petitions moued, were for that time deferred. Amongst which, one was, that a bill exhibited in the parlement holden at Westminster in the eleuenth yeare of king Henrie the fourth (which by reason the king was then troubled with ciuill [discord] came to none effect), might now [with good deliberation] be pondered, and brought to some good conclusion. The effect of which supplication was, that the temporall lands deuoutlie giuen, and disordinatlie spent by religious, and other spirituall persons, [should be seized into the kings hands, sith the same] might suffice to mainteine, to the honor of the king, and defense of the realme, fifteene earls, fifteene hundred knights, six thousand and two hundred esquiers, and a hundred almessehouses, for reliefe onelie of the poore, impotent, and needie persons, and the king to haue cleereelie to his coffers twentie thousand pounds, with manie other provisions and values of religious houses, which I passe ouer.

This bill was much noted, and more feared among the religious sort, whom [suellerie] it touched [verie neere, and therefore] to find remedie [against it, they determined to assaie all waies to put by and ouerthrow this bill: wherein they thought best to trie if they might mooue the kings mood with some sharpe inuention, that he should not regard the] importunate petitions of the commons.

With the exception of “should . . . same” all the bracketed portions are summaries of Hall, the rest is taken word for word from him.
Both Hall and Holinshed relate that the Archbishop’s speech was delivered in Parliament.

"[Herein did he much inveie against the surmised and false fained law Salike, which the Frenchmen alledge euer against the kings of England in barre of their iust title to the crowne of France.] The verie words [of that supposed law] are these, *In terram Salicam mulieres ne succedant*, [that] is to saie, into the Salike land let not women succeed. Which the [French] glossers [expound] to be the realme of France, [and that] this law [was made by] king Pharamond; [whereas yet their owne authors affirme, that the land Salike is] in Germanie, betweene the riuers of Elbe and Sala; [and that when] Charles the great [had overcome] the Saxons, [he placed] there certeine Frenchmen, which hauing [in disseine the dishonest maners] of the Germane women, made a law, that the females should not succeed to any inheritance with that land, which [at this daie] is [called Meisen], [so that, if this be true, this] law [was not] made for the realme of France, [nor] the Frenchmen possessed the land Salike, till foure hundred and one and twentie yeares [after the death of] Pharamond, the [supposed maker] of this Salike law, for this Pharamond deceased in the yeare 426, and Charles the great [subdued] the Saxons, [and placed the Frenchmen in those parts beyond the riuier of Sala], in the yeare 805.

Moreover, it appeareth by their owne writers, that king Pepine, which deposed Childerike, claimed the crowne of France, as heire generall, for that he was descended of Blithild, daughter to king Clothair the first: Hugh Capet also, who vsurped the crowne vpon Charles duke of Loraine, the sole heire male of the line and stocke of Charles the great, to make his title seeme true, and appeare good, [though in deed it was starke naught,] conuiced himselfe as heire to the ladie Lingard, daughter to king Charlemaine, sonne to Lewes the emperour, that was son to Charles the great. King Lewes also the tenth otherwise called saint Lewes, being verie heire to the said vsurper Hugh Capet, could never be satisfied in his conscience how he might iustlie keepe and possesse the crowne of France, till he was persuaded and fullie instructed, that queene Isabell his grandmother was lineallie descended of the ladie Ermengard daughter and heire to the aboue named Charles duke of Loraine, by the which marriage, the bloud and line of Charles the great was again vnited and restored to the crowne & scepter of France, so that more cleere than the sunne it openlie appeareth, that the title of
king Pepin, the claime of Hugh Capet, the possession of Lewes, yea and the French kings to this daie, are derived and conued from the heire female, though they would [vnder the colour of such a fained law], barre [the kings and princes of this realme of England of their right and lawfull inheritance.]

[The archbishop further alledged out of] the booke of Numbers this saieng: When a man dieth without a sonne, let the inheritance descend to his daughter.

In the first paragraph Holinshed has summarized Hall and slightly altered his order. His phrasing too, is different, but the unbracketed portions give some idea of the matter common to both. In the second and third paragraphs he follows Hall very closely.

ii. ii. 167-81 [Holinshed, III. 548].

[Having thus] conspired the death and destruction of me, which am the head of the realme and governor of the people, [it maie be (no)doubt] [but] that you likewise haue [sworne] the confusion of all that are here with me, and also the [desolation] of your [owne] countrie. [To what horror (O Lord) for any true English hart to consider, that such an execrable iniquitie should euer so bewrap you, as for] pleas[ing of] a forren enimie to imbrue your hands in] your bloud [and to ruine your owne natuie soile.] [Reuenge herein touching my person, though I seeke not; yet for the safegard of you my deere freends, & for due preseruation of all sorts, I am by office to cause example to be shewed. Get ye hence therefore, ye poore miserable wretches, to the receiuing of your iust reward, wherein Gods maiestie giue you grace of his mercie and repentance of your heinous] offenses.

Holinshed begins by paraphrasing Hall freely, and then in the last two sentences he adds matter of his own.

ii. iv. 132-3 [Holinshed, III. 548].

[[Henry] wrote to him that yer ought long he would tosse him some London balles that perchance should shake the walles of the best court in France]

No parallel in Hall.

iii. iii. 45-7 [Holinshed, III. 550]

To whome the Dolphin answered, that the kings power was not yet assembled, in such number as was convenient to raise so great a siege

Verbatim from Hall.
iii. vi. 41 [Holinshed, III. 552]

A soouldier [took] a pix out of a church, for which he was apprehended, & the king not once remoued till the box was restored, and the offender strangled.

Hall gives more details. He notes that the soldier "vnreuerently dyd eate the holy hostes within the same conteigned".

iii. vi. 146-68 [Holinshed, III. 552]

King Henric [aduisedlie] answered: Mine intent is to doo as it pleaseth God, I will not seeke your maister at this time; but if he or his seeke me, I will [meet] with them [God willing]. If anie of your nation attempt once to stop me in my iournie now towards Calis, at their iepardie be it; and yet [wish I not anie] of you so vnaduised, as to be the occasion thet I [die] your tawnie ground with [your red bloud]

Slightly summarized from Hall whose last sentence reads, "... I in my defence shall coloure and make redde youre tawny grounde ...".

iv. iii. 16-67 [Holinshed, III. 553]

[It is said, that as he heard one of the host vttter his wish to another thus: I would to God there were with vs now so manie good soldiers as are at this houre within England! the king answered: I would not wish a man more here than I haue, we are indeed in comparison to the enimies but a few, but if God of his clemencie doo fauour vs, and our iust cause, (as I trust he will) we shall speed well enough. But let no man ascribe victorie to our owne strength and might, but onelie to Gods assistance, to whome I haue no doubt we shall worthilie haue cause to give thanks therefore. And if so be that for our offenses sakes we shall be deliuered into the hands of our enimies, the lesse number we be, the lesse damage shall the realme of England susteine: but if we should fight in trust of multitude of men, and so get the victorie (our minds being prone to pride,) we should thervpon peraduenture ascribe the victorie not so much to the gift of God, as to our own puissance, and thereby prouoke his high indignation and displeasure against vs: and if the enimie get the vpper hand, then should our realme and countrie suffer more damage and stand in further danger. But be you of good comfort, and shew your selves valiant. God and our iust quarrell shall defend vs, and deliuer these our proud aduersaries with all the multitude of them which you see (or at the least the most of them) into our hands.]
The corresponding speech in Hall is rather different in tone, but Shakespeare takes ideas from both. Hall does not record the wish for more men.

iv. vii. 59-67 [Holinshed, III. 555]

[Some write, that the king perceiving his enemies in one part to assemble together, as though they meant to give a new battell for preservation of the prisoners, sent to them an herald, commanding them either to depart out of his sight, or else to come forward at once, and give battell: promising herewith, that if they did offer to fight againe, not onely those prisoners which his people alreadie had taken; but also so manie of them as in this new conflict, which they thus attempted should fall into his hands, should die the death without redemption.]

Not in Hall.

v. Chorus 17-22 [Holinshed, III, 556]

[The king, like a graue and sober personage, and as one remembbring from whom all victories are sent, seemed little to regard such vaie (sic) pompe and shewes as were in triumphant sort deuised for his welcomming home from so prosperous a iournie: in so much that he would not suffer his helmet to be caried with him, whereby might haue appeared to the people the blowes and dints that were to be seene in the same.]

Not in Hall.

v. ii. 354-60 [Holinshed, III. 574]

Also that one said father, during his life, shall name, call, and write vs in French in this manner: *Nostre trescher filz Henry roy d'Engleterre heretere de France.* And in Latine in this manner: *Praeclarissimus filius noster Henricus rex Angliae & haeres Franciae.*

Almost verbatim from Hall. See v. ii. 359 note.
APPENDIX II

THE GIFT OF THE TENNIS BALLS

There is no historical evidence that the Dauphin sent a gift of tennis-balls to Henry coupled with insulting remarks about his youthful frivolity. The legend, however, is found in the Brut, ed. de Brie, p. 374, and in Lydgate's Poem on Henry V's Expedition (Nicolas, Chronicle of London from 1089 to 1438, 1827, p. 216) and in Elmham's Liber Metricus all of which are contemporary documents. The truth of the matter is probably contained in the version given by Strecche ("Chronicle of John Strecche for the Reign of Henry V, 1414-1422", ed. F. Taylor in Bulletin of the John Rylands Library, XIV, 1932, p. 16).

Verumtamen isti Gallici, superbia exccecati, nociva non previdentes, nuncius regis Anglorum verba fellis eructantes, eisdem indiscretes predixerunt quod Henrico regi Anglorum, quia iuvenis erat, mitterent parvas pilas ad ludendum et pulvinaria mollia ad cubandum quoque in virile creverit in futuro.

Certain French nobles foretold the English ambassadors that . . . they would send Henry, king of the English, because he was a youth, little balls to play with and soft cushions to lie on. . . .

In other words, it was the kind of jesting threat that might easily arise on such occasions, particularly on this occasion if the French in annoyance were "belching words of bile".

Emmerig, Englische Studien, 1908, XXXIX pp. 362-401 noted a parallel with the story in Pseudo-Callisthenes that Darius, king of Persia, had sent to Alexander the Great "a strap for his castigation and a ball for his amusement". The story was apparently repeated in the Alexander romances.

It may well be that the incident recounted by Strecche was seized upon as an example of French impudence in full awareness of the Alexander story and used as propaganda (see Jacob, pp. 71-3).
APPENDIX III

THE WOOING SCENE FROM

THE FAMOUS VICTORIES OF HENRY THE FIFT

Sig. F3v.

The French king and his lords withdraw to consider the terms of the treaty.

_Hen. 5_ With a good will my good brother of France.
Secretary deliuer him a coppie.
My lords of England go before,
And I will follow you. _Exeunt Lords._

_Speakes to himselfe._

_Hen. 5._ Ah Harry, thrice vnhappie Harry.
Hast thou now conquered the French King,
And begins a fresh supply with his daughter,
But with what face canst thou seeke to gaine her loue,
Which hath fought to win her fathers Crowne?
Her fathers Crowne said I, no it is mine owne:
I but I loue her, and must craue her,
Nay I loue her and will haue her.

_Enters Lady Katheren and her ladies._

But here she comes:
How now faire Ladie, Katheren of France,
What newes?

_Katheren._ And it please your Maiestie,
My father sent me to know if you will debate any of these
Unreasonable demands which you require:

_Hen. 5._ Now trust me Kate,
I commend thy fathers wit greatly in this,
For none in the world could sooner haue made me debate it
If it were possible:
But tell me sweete Kate, canst thou tell me how to loue?

_Kate._ I cannot hate my good Lord,
Therefore far vnfit were it for me to loue.

_Hen. 5._ Tush Kate, but tell me in plaine termes,
Canst thou loue the King of England?
I cannot do as these Countries do,
That spend halfe their time in woing:

165
Tush wench, I am none such,  
But wilt thou go ouer to England?

*Kate.* I would to God, that I had your Maiestie,  
As fast in loue, as you haue my father in warres,  
I would not vouchsafe so much as one looke,    Sig. F₄r.  
Untill you had related all these unreasonable demands.

*Hen. 5.* Tush Kate, I know thou wouldst not use me so  
Hardly: But tell me, canst thou loue the king of England?

*Kate.* How should I loue him, that hath dealt so hardly  
With my father.

*Hen. 5.* But ile deale as easily with thee,  
As thy heart can imagine, or tongue can require,  
How saist thou, what will it be?

*Kate.* If I were of my owne direction,  
I could giue you answere;  
But seeing I stand at my fathers direction,  
I must first know his will.

*Hen. 5.* But shal I have thy good wil in the mean season?

*Kate.* Whereas I can put your grace in no assurance,  
I would be loth to put in any dispaire.

*Hen. 5.* Now before God, it is a sweete wench.

*She goes aside, and speaks as followeth.*

*Kat.* I may thinke my selfe the happiest in the world,  
That is beloued of the mightie King of England.

*Hen. 5.* Well Kate, are you at hoast with me?  
Sweete Kate, tel thy father from me,  
That none in the world could sooner haue persuadeth me to  
It then thou, and so tel thy father from me.

*Kat.* God keepe your Maiestie in good health.

Exit Kat.

*Hen. 5.* Farwel sweet Kate, in faith, it is a sweete wench,  
But if I knew I could not haue her fathers good wil,  
I would so rowse the Towers ouer his eares,  
That I would make him be glad to bring her me,  
Upon his hands and knees.

Exit King.

And later.    Sig. G₂r:

*Fr. King.* Wherein is it that we may satisfy your Maiestie?

*Hen. 5.* A trifle my good brother of France.  
I meane to make your daughter Queene of England,  
If she be willing, and you therewith content:  
How saist thou Kate, canst thou loue the King of England?
Kate. How should I loue thee, which is my fathers enemy?

Hen. 5. Tut stand not vpon these points,
    Tis you must make vs friends:
    I know Kate, thou art not a little proud, that I loue thee:
    What wench, the King of England?

French King. Daughter let nothing stand betwixt the King of England and thee, agree to it.

Sig. G2v

Kate. I had best whilst he is willing,
    Least when I would, he will not:
    I rest at your Maiesties command.

Hen. 5. Welcome sweet Kate, but my brother of France,
    What say you to it?

French King. With all my heart I like it,
    But when shall be your wedding day?

Hen. 5. The first Sunday of the next moneth,
    God willing.

Sound Trumpets.

Exeunt omnes.

FINIS
**Central Archaeological Library, New Delhi**

**Issue record.**

Catalogue No. 322.33/sha/wal-3659

Author—Shakespeare, William.

Title—King Henry V. (Asden)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Borrower No.</th>
<th>Date of Issue</th>
<th>Date of Return</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

"A book that is shut is but a block"

**Central Archaeological Library**

Govt. of India
Department of Archaeology
New Delhi.

Please help us to keep the book clean and moving.